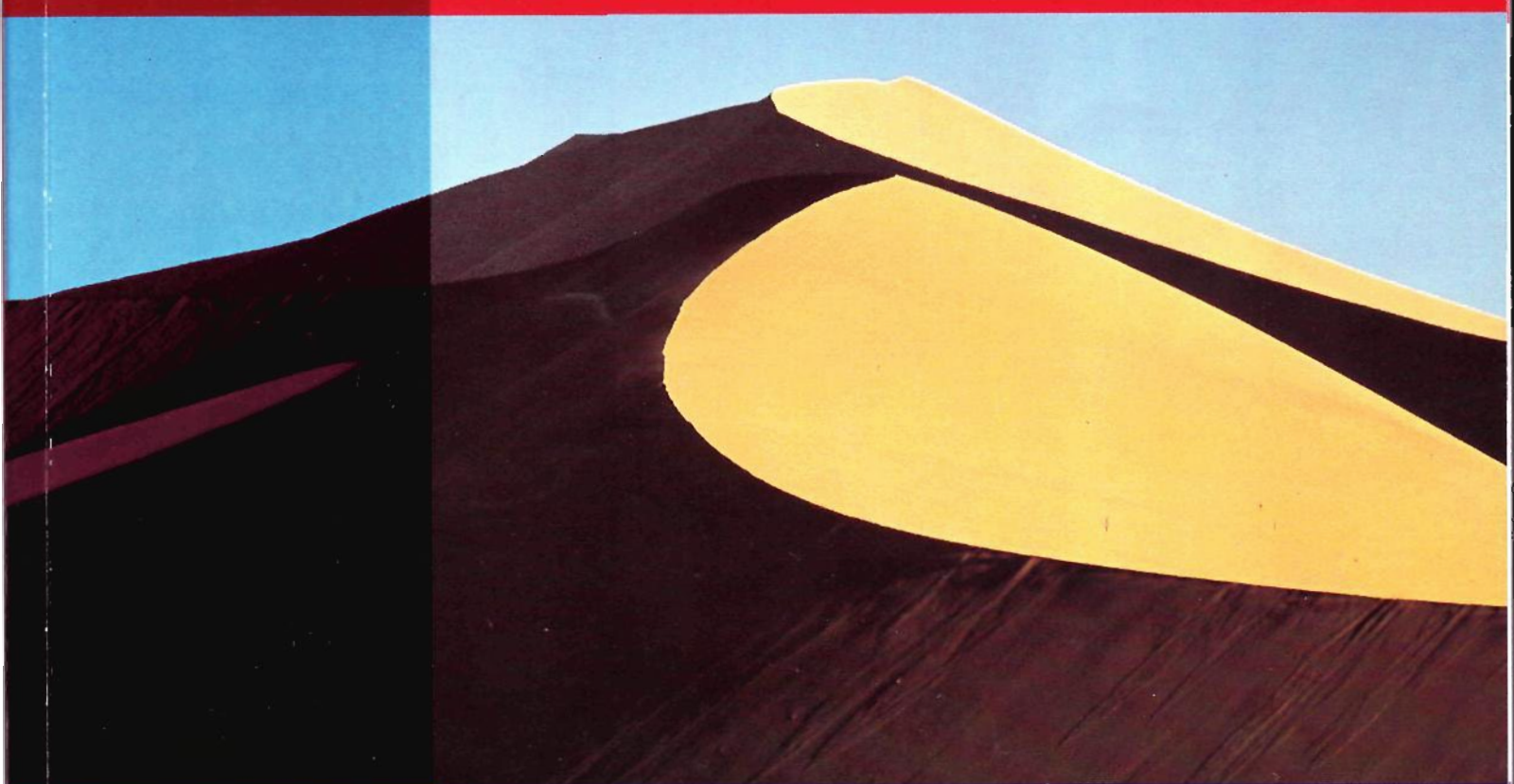
NEW

CUTTING EDGE

ELEMENTARY



with mini-dictionary

STUDENTS' BOOK

sarah cunningham peter moor
with frances eales

Longman
www.longman.com

CONTENTS

Module	Language focus	Vocabulary	Reading / Listening
Module 0 What English do you know? page 6	1 Common words 2 Numbers 0–21 3 Plurals 4 *The alphabet* 5 Pronouns and possessive adjectives	6 Numbers 1–100 7 Days of the week 8 Saying hello and goodbye 9 Classroom instructions	
Module 1 People and places page 8	1 *be*: names and countries 2 *be*: personal information *Pronunciation: short forms* 3 Articles (1): *a/an* + jobs 4 *be*: personal questions *Pronunciation: Sentence stress in questions and short answers*	Names and countries *Pronunciation: Word stress* Nationalities *Pronunciation: Word stress* Jobs *Pronunciation: Word stress*	**Reading and listening:** *General knowledge quiz*
Module 2 You and yours page 18	1 *this, that, these, those* *Pronunciation: this /ðɪs/, that /ðæt/, these /ðiːz/ and those /ðəʊz/* 2 *have got* 3 Possessive 's	Everyday objects *Pronunciation: Word stress* Family vocabulary	**Reading and listening:** *My favourite thing* *Pronunciation: Short forms*
Module 3 Everyday life page 26	1 Present simple questions *Pronunciation: Sentence stress in questions* 2 Present simple (positive and negative)	Common verbs **Vocabulary and speaking:** Daily routines	**Reading and vocabulary:** *Life in Britain* **Listening:** *Life in Australia*
Module 4 Loves and hates page 34	1 Present simple: *he* and *she*, *like ...ing*, *questions* *Pronunciation: Third person verb forms* 2 Present simple questions: *he* and *she* 3 Activity verbs and adverbs of frequency	Activities	**Listening:** Celebrity loves and hates **Reading:** *An American star in London and a British star in Hollywood*
Module 5 Getting from A to B page 42	1 *can* and *can't* *Pronunciation:* can *and* can't 2 Articles (2): *a/an*, *the* and zero	**Vocabulary and reading:** Transport	**Listening and vocabulary:** At the airport
Consolidation modules 1–5 pages 50–51	A Listening and speaking: Personal information B Question words C Listening: Information about times and prices	D *can* and *can't* E Vocabulary: Alphabet quiz	
Module 6 Eating and drinking page 52	1 *There is* and *There are* *Pronunciation: Linking* 2 *some* and *any* *Pronunciation: Sentence stress* 3 *How much* and *How many*	Food (countable and uncountable nouns)	**Listening:** Breakfasts around the world **Reading and speaking:** *Food: Facts and myths*
Module 7 Extraordinary lives page 60	1 Past simple: *was* and *were* *Pronunciation: Past forms of* be 2 Past simple: regular and irregular verbs *Pronunciation: Regular past simple forms*	Years, decades and centuries *Pronunciation: Sentence stress*	**Reading:** *An ordinary life ... an amazing idea* **Listening:** A true story

Task	Further skills	Study Practise Remember
Task: Find information from documents *Preparation: reading* *Task: speaking* *Follow up: writing*	**Real life:** Answering questions *Pronunciation: Stress and intonation in questions* WB **Improve your writing:** Addresses in English	**Study tip:** Capital letters *Pronunciation spot: The sound /ə/ (schwa)*
Task: Talk about your family tree *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking* *Follow up: writing*	**Real life:** Classroom language *Pronunciation: Sounding polite* WB **Improve your writing:** Writing about your family	**Study tip:** Learning grammar words *Pronunciation spot: The sounds /ð/ and /θ/*
Task: Find things in common *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking*	**Real life:** Days and times *Pronunciation: Sentence stress* WB **Improve your writing:** Commas, full stops, *and* and *but*	**Study tip:** Remembering spelling *Pronunciation spot: Silent syllables*
Task: Find an e-mail friend *Preparation: reading* *Task: reading and speaking*	**Real life:** Asking politely *Pronunciation: Sounding polite* WB **Improve your writing:** A paragraph about a friend	**Study tip:** Finding spelling in a dictionary (1) *Pronunciation spot: Words ending in s*
Task: Complete a survey about transport *Preparation: reading and writing* *Task: speaking* *Follow up: writing*	**Real life:** Buying a ticket WB **Improve your writing:** Completing an immigration form	
Task: Describe the differences between two pictures *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking*	**Real life:** Ordering food and drink *Pronunciation: international words; Sounding polite* WB **Improve your writing:** Describing food	**Study tip:** Finding grammar in a dictionary (1) *Pronunciation spot: International words*
Task: Tell your life story *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking* *Follow up: writing*	**Real life:** Dates and other past time phrases *Pronunciation: Sentence stress* WB **Improve your writing:** Time linkers: *before, after, then*	**Study tip:** Finding grammar in a dictionary (2) *Pronunciation spot: The sounds /ɔ:/ and /ɜ:/*

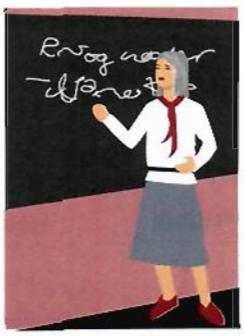
Module	Language focus	Vocabulary	Reading / Listening
Module 8 Fact or fiction? page 68	1 Past simple negative forms *Pronunciation: Sentence stress* 2 Past simple questions	Describing films *Pronunciation: Word stress*	**Reading:** *Film facts!* **Listening:** The author behind the legend
Module 9 Buying and selling page 78	1 Comparative adjectives *Pronunciation: Stressed and weak syllables* 2 Superlative adjectives	Shops and shopping	**Reading:** *The world's most famous markets*
Module 10 Street life page 86	1 Present continuous *Pronunciation: The sound /ŋ/* 2 Present simple or Present continuous?	Clothes *Pronunciation: Vowel sounds* Vocabulary and writing: Describing people	**Listening:** People who wear uniforms
Consolidation modules 6–10 pages 94–95	A Grammar: Present simple, Present continuous, Past simple B Reading and speaking: Snacks around the world C Speaking: Real life	D Listening: Song: *Return to Sender* E Reading and speaking: Comparatives and superlatives F Vocabulary: Word groups	
Module 11 The world around us page 96	1 *can* and *can't* for ability *Pronunciation: Sentence stress and weak forms* 2 Question words 3 Use of articles (3) *Pronunciation: Different pronunciations of the*	Animals and natural features	**Reading:** *Amazing facts about the natural world* **Listening:** Man's best friends?
Module 12 A weekend away page 104	1 Future intentions: *going to, would like to* and *want to* *Pronunciation: Weak form of to* 2 Suggestions and offers *Pronunciation: Sounding polite*	Vocabulary and speaking: Going out and staying in	
Module 13 Learning for the future page 112	1 Infinitive of purpose 2 *might* and *will* *Pronunciation: Present and future forms*	Vocabulary and speaking: Education and careers *Pronunciation: Silent vowel sounds*	**Reading:** *Easy English?* **Listening:** My career
Module 14 Keeping in touch page 120	1 Present perfect *Pronunciation: Sentence stress* 2 Time phrases with the Present perfect and Past simple	Ways of communicating	**Reading:** *Getting in touch through the ages*
Module 15 Going places page 128	1 Prepositions of movement *Pronunciation: Sentence stress* 2 *have to, don't have to, can* and *can't* *Pronunciation:* have to	Things in a town *Pronunciation: Word stress*	**Listening:** A tour of Edinburgh
Consolidation modules 11–15 pages 136–137	A Verb practice B Articles C Writing and speaking	D Listening: Song: *Trains and Boats and Planes* E Vocabulary: Word groups	

Task	Further skills	Study Practise Remember
Task: Interview other students about arts and entertainment *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking* *Follow up: writing*	**Real life:** Arranging a night out WB **Improve your writing:** A diary	**Study tip:** Checking and revising *Pronunciation spot: Stressed syllables*
Task: Choose souvenirs from your country *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking*	**Real life:** Asking in shops *Pronunciation: Sentence stress in questions* WB **Improve your writing:** Describing a place	Study tip: Finding spelling in a dictionary (2) *Pronunciation spot: The sound /ɪ/*
Task: Complete and describe a picture *Preparation: listening* *Task: speaking*	Real life: Street talk *Pronunciation: Sounding polite* WB **Improve your writing:** Correcting mistakes	
Task: Devise a general knowledge quiz *Preparation: listening* *Task: writing and speaking*	**Real life:** Saying quantities and big numbers WB **Improve your writing:** Punctuation	Study tip: Recording new vocabulary *Pronunciation spot: The sounds /w/ and /h/*
Task: Plan a weekend away *Preparation: reading and listening* *Task: speaking*	Real life: Talk about the weather WB **Improve your writing:** Write about a holiday place	Study tip: Remembering collocations *Pronunciation spot: Short forms*
Task: Find the right course *Preparation: reading and speaking* *Task: speaking*	**Real life:** Applying for a course WB **Improve your writing:** Abbreviations (*Mr, Mrs, Dr, n/a*)	Study tip: English outside the classroom *Pronunciation spot: The sounds /ɒ/, /əʊ/ and /ɔː/*
Task: Analyse a questionnaire *Preparation: reading* *Task: speaking*	Real life: Telephoning *Pronunciation: Sounding polite* WB **Improve your writing:** Writing a note	Study tip: Revising *Pronunciation spot: The sounds /æ/ and /ʌ/*
Task: Plan a website about your town *Preparation: vocabulary and reading* *Task: speaking* *Follow up: writing*	Real life: Following directions WB **Improve your writing:** A postcard	

What English do you know?

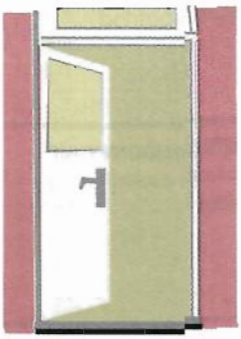
1 a man

2 a boy



3 a teacher

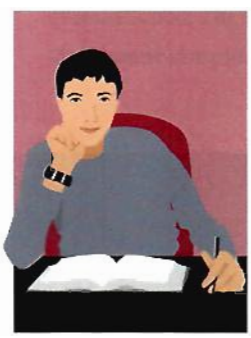
4 a chair



5 a door

6 a pen

a a desk

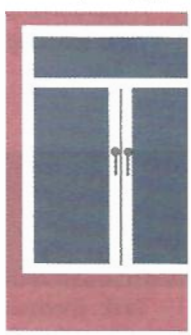


b a student

c a woman

d a notebook

e a girl



f a window

1 Common words

T0.1 Match the pairs of words above. Listen and check, then repeat.

1 c *a man – a woman*

2 Numbers 0–21

a Write the numbers.

twenty 20	eight	nine	four
sixteen	fifteen	five	ten
three	zero	seven	two
one	seventeen	twelve	thirteen
six	twenty-one	nineteen	eleven
eighteen	fourteen		

b T0.2 Listen and say the numbers 0 to 21.

3 Plurals

a T0.3 Write the plurals. Then listen and repeat.

1	book	4	chair	7	boy
2	teacher	5	student	8	man
3	desk	6	girl	9	woman

b How many can you see in your classroom?

five students

4 The alphabet

a T0.4 Listen and say the alphabet.

b Spell:

- your first name
- your surname
- the name of your street
- the name of your city
- your teacher's name

5 Pronouns and possessive adjectives

What are the pronouns in A in your language? Match them to the possessive adjectives in B.

	A	B
a	I	your
b	you	its
c	he	our
d	she	my
e	it	her
f	we	their
g	they	his

6 Numbers 1–100

a T0.5 Write the next three numbers. Listen and check, then repeat.

21 twenty-two, twenty-three, twenty-four

twenty-one (21)
thirty-five (35)
forty-three (43)
fifty-six (56)
sixty-six (66)
seventy-four (74)
eighty-one (81)
ninety-seven (97)

b T0.6 Listen and write the twelve numbers.

c Say the number and the number before.

twenty-one ... twenty

21	17	65	86	54	11	45
13	100	25	90	7	33	18

7 Days of the week

T0.7 Write the days in the correct place. Listen and check, then repeat.

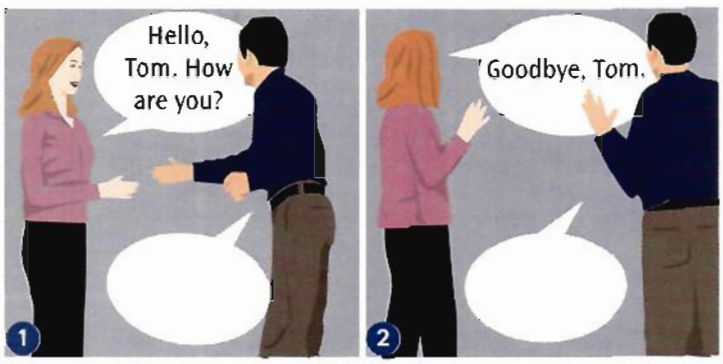
Friday Sunday Wednesday Saturday Tuesday

a Monday
b _____
c _____
d Thursday
e _____
f _____
g _____

8 Saying hello and goodbye

a T0.8 Match the sentences to the pictures. Listen and check.

Bye, Kate. See you later. Fine thanks, and you?



b Practise the conversations. Use your names.

9 Classroom instructions

a Match the teacher's instructions to the pictures.

1 Open your books at page 10, please. f
2 Listen.
3 Write this in your notebooks.
4 Look at the picture.
5 Put your books here, please.
6 Work in pairs.

b T0.9 Listen and follow the instructions.

MODULE 1

People and places

- *be* (positive, negative, questions and short answers): personal information
- Articles: *a/an* + jobs
- Vocabulary: Names, countries and nationalities
- Reading and listening: *General knowledge quiz*
- Task: Find information from documents
- Real life: Answering questions

Language focus 1

be: names and countries

1 Work in pairs. Practise this conversation.

Hello, my name's ... What's your name?

Hi, I'm ...

Nice to meet you.

And you.

2 a T1.1 Put the sentences in the box in the conversation on the right. Then listen and check.

No, no! I'm from Buenos Aires. ~~Hi. How are you?~~
Nice to meet you, Carla. Nice to meet you, too.
Really? Manchester's a fantastic city.

b Are these sentences true (✔) or false (✘)?

1 Carla's from Italy.
2 Ariel's from Italy.
3 Ben and Emily are English.
4 They're from London.

Grammar

1 *be*: positive forms

Complete the gaps.

I	I'_____ from Milan. (= I am)
You	_____ you from Milan too?
He	He'_____ from Buenos Aires. (= He is)
She	Carla'_____ from Italy. (= Carla is)
They	Ben and Emily _____ from Manchester.

2 Questions

_____'s your name?
_____ are you from?

▶ Read Language summary A on page 150.

EMILY: Hi, Carla.
CARLA: (1) ~~Hi. How are you?~~
EMILY: Fine, thanks. Carla, this is Ben. Ben, this is Carla, from my class. She's from Milan.
BEN: (2) _____
CARLA: Hello, Ben. Nice to meet you. This is my friend Ariel.
EMILY: Hello, Ariel. Where are you from? Are you from Italy, too?
ARIEL: (3) _____
EMILY: Well, nice to meet you.
ARIEL: (4) _____
CARLA: Emily and Ben are from Manchester.
ARIEL: (5) _____
EMILY: Thank you.

Practice

1 a Walk around the class. Ask and answer these questions.

What's your name?

Where are you from?

b Introduce a student to the class.

This is Ramon. He's from ...

Pronunciation

T1.2 Listen and practise saying these countries.

Italy	Mexico	Britain	the USA
Argentina	Russia	China	Egypt
Poland	Spain	Germany	Thailand

2 Work in pairs. Point to the photos. Ask and answer questions like this.

Where's he from?

He's from the USA.

Where are they from?

They're from Argentina.

3 a Where are these cities? Which are capital cities? Ask and answer with your partner.

Hamburg	Bangkok	San Diego	Liverpool
Warsaw	St Petersburg	Beijing	Buenos Aires
Cairo	Barcelona	Rome	Monterrey

Where's Hamburg?

Hamburg's in Germany.

Where's Bangkok?

Bangkok's the capital of Thailand.

b T1.3 Listen and check.

Vocabulary
Nationalities

a Match the nationalities to the countries.

	Country	Nationality
1	Spain	British
2	China	American
3	the USA	Japanese
4	Turkey	Chinese
5	Italy	Polish
6	Britain	Italian
7	Poland	Korean
8	Australia	Russian
9	Japan	French
10	Korea	Spanish
11	France	Turkish
12	Russia	Australian

b T1.4 Listen and check.

Pronunciation

T1.5 Listen. Can you hear the stress?

Bri-tish

A-mer-i-can

Ja-pa-nese

Mark the stress on the other nationalities in exercise 1. Listen, check and repeat.

Reading and listening

a Work in pairs. Do the general knowledge quiz.

b T1.6 Listen and check your answers. Count your marks.

GENERAL KNOWLEDGE QUIZ

A Match the currencies to the countries. (4 marks)

Australia Japan France Turkey

euro

lire

dollar

yen

B Match the stamps to the countries. (4 marks)

Poland Egypt Thailand Britain

C Which of these companies is: (4 marks)

Italian? Korean? German? Japanese?

1 2 HYUNDAI 3 SONY 4 GUCCI

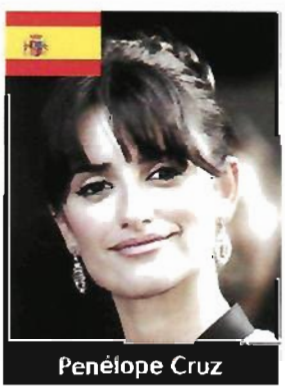
D Which word below is in: (5 marks)

Arabic? Chinese? Russian? Italian? Spanish?

1 Hola 2 السلام عليكم 3 Здравствуйте 4 你好 5 Ciao

E What nationality are these actresses? (3 marks)

Nicole Kidman


Penélope Cruz

Jennifer Lopez

Language focus 2

be: personal information

1 MD Look at photos 1–3. Match the sentences below to the people.

a His name's Andrei. 1
b Her name's Marisol.
c Their names are Toshi and Mariko.
d They're from Tokyo.
e He's from Russia.
f She's from Valencia in Spain.
g He's twenty-two.
h He's a student at Moscow University.
i He's nineteen.
j She's at the airport.
k She isn't on holiday. She's on business.
l They're tourists.
m She's thirty-five and she's married.
n He isn't married. He's single.
o They aren't married. They're friends.

2 T1.7 Listen to Andrei, Marisol and Toshi. Check your answers.

Grammar

***be*: positive and negative short forms.**

T1.8 Complete the table. Then listen and check.

⊕	short form	⊖	short form
I am	_____	I am not	I'm not
you are	you're	you are not	_____
he is	_____	he is not	_____
she is	_____	she is not	_____
it is	it's	it is not	_____
we are	we're	we are not	we aren't
they are	_____	they are not	_____

▶ Read Language summaries A, B and E on page 150.

Pronunciation

Look at the tapescript for recording 8 on page 164. Listen again. Practise saying the short forms in sentences.

Practice

1 a Write four true and four false sentences about the people in the photos.

b Work in pairs. Read out your sentences. Your partner corrects the false ones.

Toshi's from Tokyo.

True.

Toshi and Mariko are married.

False. They aren't married. They're friends.

2 MD Tick the sentences that are true for you. Correct the false ones.

a You're in an English lesson. ✔
b You're from China.
I'm not from China. I'm from ...
c You're Italian.
d Your school's in New York.
e Your classroom's very small.
f Your teacher's from Scotland.
g Your teacher's married.
h Your father's a politician.
i Your parents are on holiday.
j Your English lessons are in the evening.
k You're thirty-five years old.
l You're at work.

Language focus 3

Articles (1): a/an + jobs

1 T1.9 Match the jobs to the pictures. Then listen and check.

a footballer a musician an engineer a lawyer
a police officer a PA (personal assistant) a singer
an electrician a shop assistant a doctor and a nurse
an actor and an actress a waiter and a waitress
a businessman and a businesswoman

Pronunciation

T1.10 Listen and mark the stress on the words in exercise 1. Practise saying the words.

• footballer • musician • engineer

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the people in the pictures.

What's his job? He's an actor.

Grammar

With jobs we use the articles *a/an*.

an + vowel (a, e, i, o, u)	*a* + other letters
He's an engineer.	*I'm a waiter.*
She's an actress.	*He's a police officer.*

▶ Read Language summary F on page 150.

Practice

1 Make four true sentences. Compare sentences with a partner.

Examples:
I'm a law student. My mother's a doctor.
My father's an electrician. My friend Yusef's a student.

2 Write a short paragraph about yourself.

My name's ...
I'm ... years old.
I'm a ...
I'm from ... in ...
I'm ... (married).
My mother/husband is a ...

3 a Work in pairs. Student A: Read about two famous people on page 138. Student B: Read about two famous people on page 140.

b Give three pieces of information about each person but do not say his/her name. Can your partner guess who he/she is.

He's an actor. He's from the USA. He isn't married. Leonardo DiCaprio?

c Play again. This time you think of the famous people.

Language focus 4

be: personal questions

1 a MD Read the market research interview. Which is the best answer to each question?

1 What's your full name?
a My name's Will.
b It's William Anthony Barker.

2 Where are you from?
a I'm from Wellington in New Zealand.
b I'm French.

3 Are you here on holiday?
a No, I'm a tourist. **b** Yes, I am.

4 How old are you?
a It's thirty-two. **b** I'm twenty-six.

5 What's your job?
a I'm a musician. **b** You're a student.

6 Are you married?
a Yes, I'm single. **b** No, I'm not.

7 What's your address in England?
a It's 25 Manor Road, London N10.
b It's willbarker@blc.com.

8 What's your telephone number?
a It's 020 7535 3555. **b** No, it isn't.

b T1.11 Listen to the interview and check.

Grammar

1 Questions with *be*
Notice the word order.

answer	question
I'm twenty-six.	How old are you?
My phone number's 0171 53355.	What's your phone number?

2 Short answers to yes/no questions

Are you married?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is he on holiday?	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

▶ Read Language summaries C and D on page 150.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions from exercise 1. Answer for yourself.

Pronunciation

1 T1.12 Look at the tapescript on page 164. Listen to the stress in the questions and short answers.

Are you on holiday? Yes, I am.

Are you married? No, I'm not.

2 Listen and practise the questions and answers.

Practice

1 Put the questions into the correct order.

a you / a student /are? *Are you a student?*
b you / are / twenty-one?
c from / is / Britain / your teacher?
d what / your / e-mail address / 's?
e old / how / is / your mother?
f where / from / Jennifer Lopez / 's?
g where / Manchester / 's?
h you / single / are?
i you / from / are / a big city?
j your father / a businessman / is?

2 Work in pairs. Choose five questions to ask your partner.

What's your full name? Are you from ...?

Task: Find information from documents

Preparation: reading

1 MD Read Hana's employee card. Mark the sentences true (✓) or false (✗).

a Her first name's Antonia.
b Her surname's Vincent.
c Her mobile number's 07711 681609.
d She's thirty-three years old.
e She's from Britain.
f Paul Vincent is her husband.
g His work number is 776544.
h Her doctor's name is Dr Elm.

2 Work in pairs. Look at the questions in the Useful language box. Then ask and answer about Hana.

CHC

Employee Personal Data

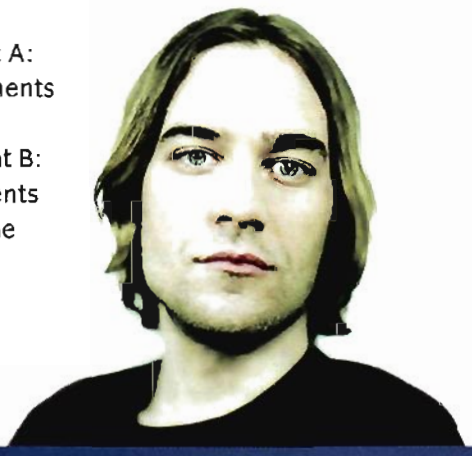
Full name Hana Antonia Vincent
Address 78A Elm Road, York, YO19 5US
Home phone number (01904) 8763973
Mobile ~~07711681609~~ 0795 323561
Date of birth 22.11.79
Place of birth Prague, Czech Republic

Contact in an emergency Paul Vincent (husband)
Home number as above
Work number (01904) 776 544
Mobile 0795 768879

Doctor's name, address and telephone number
Dr Jo Boxer, Elm Medical Centre, 3 Elm Road, York, YO6 4EJ
01904 998 788

Task: speaking

1 Work in pairs. Student A: Look at Jamie's documents on page 15. Complete the table about Jamie. Student B: Look at Chrissie's documents on page 139. Complete the table about Chrissie.



	Jamie	Chrissie
Full name		
Age		
Address		
Job		
Where from?		
E-mail address		
Telephone number		
Married / Single?		

The Scotland Bank

CURRENT ACCOUNT STATEMENT

Account name	JS Burden
Account number	89387239
Branch	Glasgow, Dumbarton Road
	Tel 0141 663 1890

2251 of 3

W042 UPA3 57033 006383

Mr J S Burden
33b Park Street
Glasgow
G12 8AG

student card

NAME	Jamie Stuart Burden
PLACE OF STUDY	University of Glasgow
COURSE OF STUDY	Art History
CONTACT TELEPHONE NUMBER	0141 228 4275
E-MAIL ADDRESS	j.burden@glas.ac.uk

This card entitles you to use the facilities of the Students' Union, including the library, the computer centre, and the bar.

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

Passport Passeport | Type / Type: P | Code of Issuing / Code de l'Etat: GBR | Passport No / Passeport No: 700253853

Surname / Nom (1): BURDEN

Given names / Prénoms(2): JAMES STUART

Nationality / Nationalité (3): BRITISH CITIZEN

Date of birth / Date de naissance (4): 24 AUG / AOUT 86

Children / Enfants(5): 0

Sex / Sexe(6): M

Place of birth / Lieu de naissance(7): GLASGOW

2 Student A: Ask Student B questions about Chrissie. Student B: Ask Student A questions about Jamie. Write the information in the table.

▶ Useful language a and b

Follow up: writing

Write a short paragraph about Hana, Chrissie or Jamie.

His/Her name's ...
He's/She's ... years old.
He's/She's from ...
His/Her address is ...
He's/She's ...

Useful language

a Questions

What's his first name / surname / full name?

How do you spell it?

What's her work / home / mobile number?

What's his job?

How old is she?

Where's he from?

Is she married?

b Other useful phrases

I don't know.

Sorry, I don't understand.

Real life

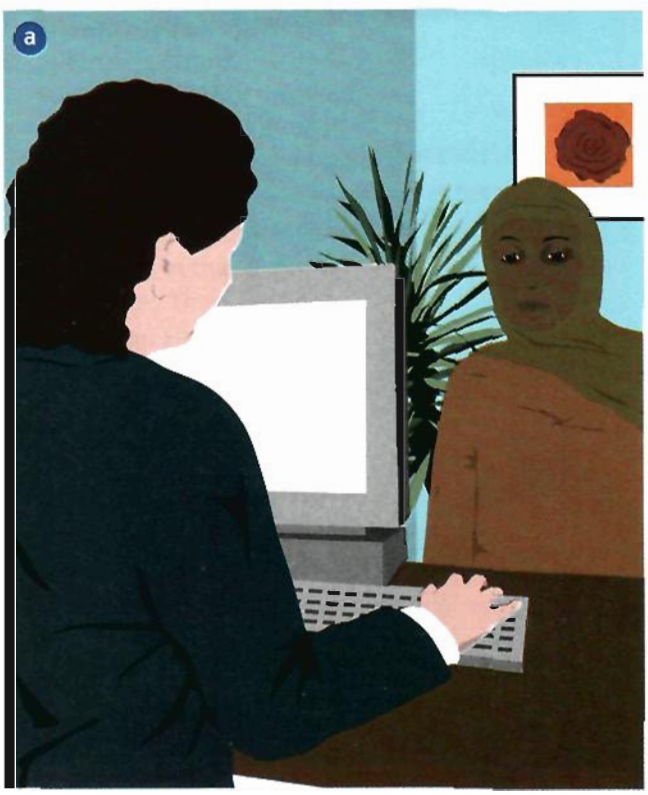
Answering questions

1 Do you remember how to say the alphabet and numbers? Look back at page 6, if necessary.

2 T1.13 Listen and match the conversations to the pictures. Where are the people?

3 a Look at the forms. What questions can you ask to find the missing information?

b Listen again and complete the forms.



Full name: Shireen (a) _____

Address: (b) _____ Abbot's Road, Colchester

CO2 (c) _____

Phone numbers: home (d) _____

work (e) _____

E-mail: s.rahman@firstserve.com

Nationality: (f) _____

Married: (g) Yes _____ No _____

Occupation: (h) _____

Age: (i) _____

4 a T1.14 Listen and stop after each question. Answer for yourself.

b Practise the questions.

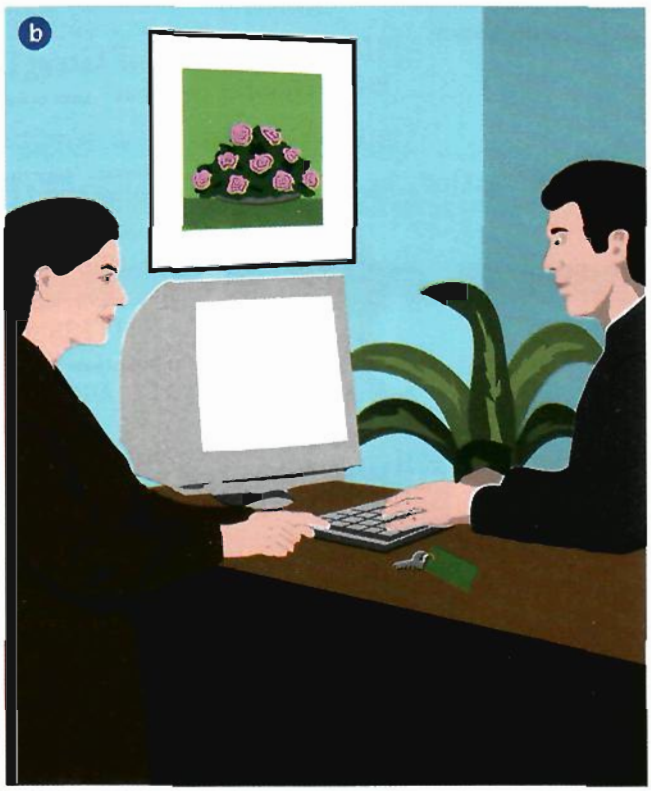
Pronunciation

Look at recording 14 on page 165. Listen to the stress and intonation of the questions.

What's your surname? How do you spell that?

What's your first name?

5 Work in pairs. Act out the conversations in the pictures. Use your own name, address, etc.



The Royal Spa

Name: (j) Emma _____

Passport number: (k) _____

Room number: (l) _____

STUDY...

Capital letters

1 Which underlined letters need capital letters? Look back through Module 1 to help you correct the sentences.

a what's your name?
b i'm here on business.
c this is emily.
d are you mrs ream?

2 MD *Use your mini-dictionary to find which of these need capital letters.*

english	arabic
poland	teacher
saturday	notebook
december	

▶ **Read Language summary G on page 150.**

Pronunciation spot

The sound /ə/ (schwa)

a T1.15 /ə/ is a very important sound in English. It isn't stressed. Listen and repeat.

/ə/ ● /ə/ ● /ə/
American German

/ə/ ● /ə/ /ə/ /ə/ ●
a doctor an engineer

●/ə/
holiday

b T1.16 Listen and mark the stress. Then listen again and mark the /ə/ sounds.

Britain London Russia

Australian Italian

a waiter an actor a student

a businessman an electrician

PRACTISE...

1 Short forms of be ☐

Rewrite the sentences using short forms.

a ~~She is~~ She's on business.
b He is a student.
c I am Marta.
d You are on holiday.
e I am not married.
f We are not from Madrid.
g We are from Malaga.
h She is not at school.
i They are not American.

▶ **Need to check? Language summaries A and B, page 150.**

2 *be* ☐

Put the correct form of *be* in the correct place. Use short forms, where possible.

a Are you married?
b This Pablo.
c What your name?
d Where you from?
e They Italian.
f I not a student.
g She twenty-three years old.
h We on holiday.
i How old he?

▶ **Need to check? Language summaries A, B and C page 150.**

3 Countries and nationalities ☐

Write the country and nationality for each capital city.

a Paris France, French
b London _____
c Moscow _____
d Rome _____
e Madrid _____
f Beijing _____
g Warsaw _____
h Tokyo _____

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, page 10.**

4 *a/an* + jobs ☐

Complete the jobs and add *a* or *an*.

a an a c t o r
b ___ b _ s _ n _ ss _ _ _
c ___ n u _ _ _
d ___ e _ g i n _ _ _
e ___ w _ i _ e _
f ___ e l _ _ _ r _ _ _ _ n
g ___ p _ l _ _ _ o _ _ _ c _ r
h ___ l _ _ y _ _

▶ **Need to check? Language focus 3, page 12.**

5 Question words ☐

Complete the questions with *How*, *Where* or *What*.

a What 's your name?
b _____ old are you?
c _____'s your job?
d _____ are you from?
e _____ do you spell your surname?
f _____'s your work number?

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 16.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 160 to check what you know!

MODULE 2

You and yours

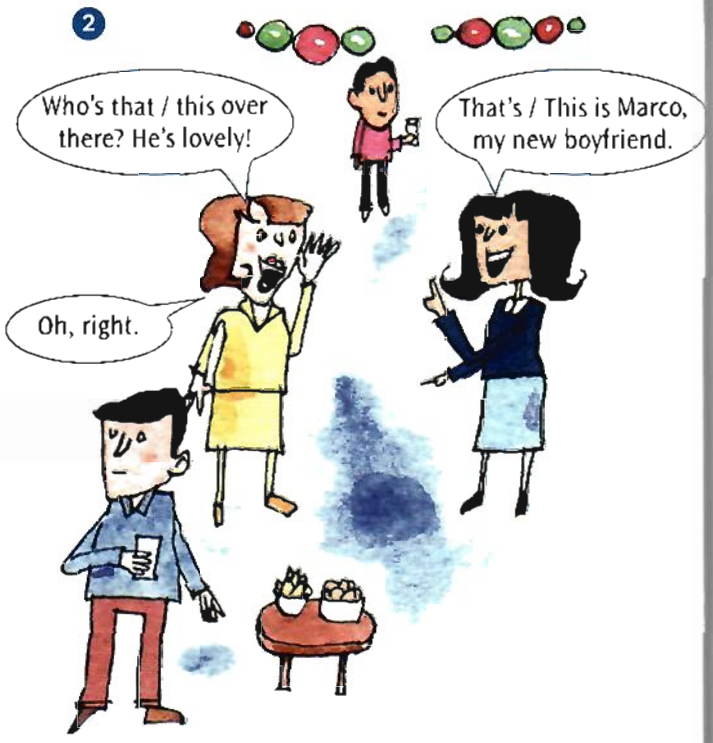
- *this, that, these, those*
- *have got*
- Possessive 's
- *Vocabulary: Everyday objects, Family vocabulary*
- Reading and listening: *My favourite thing*
- Task: Talk about your family tree
- Real life: Classroom language

Language focus 1
this, that, these, those

T2.1 Circle the correct words. Then listen and check.

1

2



3

4

Grammar

this book	*these books*	*that book*	*those books*

▶ Read Language summaries A and B on page 150.

Pronunciation

1 T2.2 Listen to the pronunciation, then repeat.

this /ðɪs/ parcel	these /ðiːz/ children
that /ðæt/ man	those /ðəʊz/ keys

2 T2.3 Listen and write the eight sentences. Then listen again and repeat.

Practice

Choose the correct alternatives.

1 Look! This / That letter's from Jon.
2 Marianne, this is / that's Katie.
Katie, this is / that's Marianne.
3 Look at this / that man over there!
4 Who are that / those people with Julia?

5 Excuse me, what's this / that word here?
6 Are this / these your books, Charlie?

7 Is this / that Tanya in that car?
8 Look at these / those photos over here.

Vocabulary

Everyday objects

1 Find these things in the photo. Then test your partner.

photos a camera a bottle of water a credit card keys stamps
a mobile phone a brush a diary coins a packet of chewing gum
a watch a cheque book a phone card postcards a dictionary
an identity card a packet of tissues a wallet sweets glasses

What's this in English? — It's a credit card.

What are these? — I don't know. — They're coins.

Pronunciation

T2.4 Look at the words in the box above. Listen and mark the stress. Then listen and repeat.

• photos • camera • bottle of water •

2 Work in pairs. Point to things in the classroom and ask your partner.

What's that in English? — A cassette player, I think.

What are those? — Chairs.

Language focus 2
have got

1 T2.5 Listen and complete the gaps with the phrases.

I've got	Have you got	I haven't got

2 T2.6 Listen and answer the questions for yourself with a ✔ or a ✘.

a ☐ c ☐ e ☐ g ☐ i ☐
b ☐ d ☐ f ☐ h ☐ j ☐

3 a Work in pairs. Guess what your partner has got in his/her pocket or bag.

Have you got a dictionary with you?

Yes, I have. Here it is.

No, I haven't. It's at home.

b Tell the class about your partner.

Paulo's got a mobile in his bag, but he hasn't got a pen.

Grammar

1 Complete the gaps.

⊕ I've got my mobile phone with me.
He's/She's _____ his credit card.
We've/They've _____ the bag.

⊖ I haven't _____ my watch with me.
He/She hasn't _____ his money.
We/They _____ the keys.

? _____ *you* _____ *a phone card?*
_____ he/she _____ her camera?
_____ we/they _____ the photos?

2 Notice:

He's French. (= he is)
He's got a French car. (= he has)

▶ Read Language summary C on page 151.

Practice

1 Complete the gaps with the correct form of *have got*.

a I think her parents are rich – they _____ four cars.
b Sorry, I _____ a pen with me.
c We _____ a dog. His name's Alfie.
d Annie's from a very big family. She _____ six brothers.
e '_____ you _____ your cheque book with you?' 'No, but I _____ my credit card.'
f _____ *your brother* _____ *a new motorbike?*

2 a Match the questions with the answers. Then complete the gaps.

1 _____ you got a car? ☐
2 How old _____ it? ☐
3 What colour _____ it? ☐
4 What make _____ it? ☐

a It's a Fiat.
b It's red.
c Yes, I have.
d It's very old – about ten years old.

b Work in pairs. Use some of the questions above to ask about these things.

a car	a TV in your bedroom	a bicycle
a pet	a mobile phone	a computer
a piano	a DVD player	a camera

Reading and listening

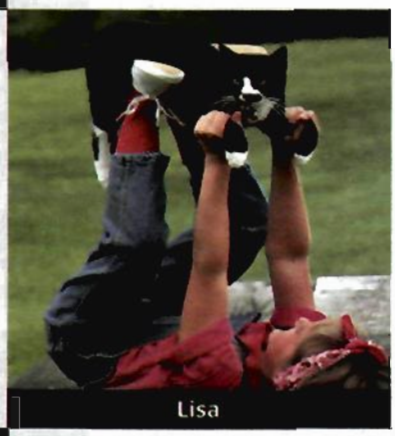
My favourite thing

1 MD T2.7 Look at the photos. What are Kemal, Lisa, Tom and Mo's favourite things? Listen and read to check your answers.

Kemal

"This is my car and I love it! It's a German car and it's my favourite colour, silver. It's really, really fast, really comfortable and it's got a fantastic CD player – it's just great."

"My favourite thing isn't really a thing, it's our pet cat, Billy. We've got four cats in our family, but Billy's my favourite. He's black and white and he's got beautiful green eyes. He isn't very friendly with other people, but he loves me!"

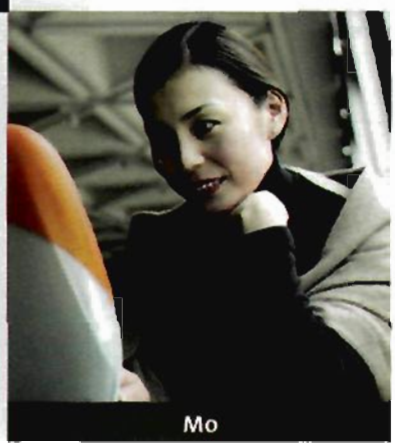


Lisa

Tim

"I'm a professional musician, so my trumpet's really important to me. Actually, I've got three, but this one's my favourite: it's a Bach trumpet made in America – and it's about forty years old!"

"My favourite thing is my computer – my laptop. It isn't new but I really like it. I really like the orange colour. And it's got everything I want – e-mail, the Internet, a DVD player and I've got some really good games on it. I love my laptop!"



Mo

2 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

a What is ...
- German?
- orange?
- about forty years old?
- fast and comfortable?

b Who is ...
- black and white?
- a musician?
- not very friendly?

c Who has got ...
- green eyes?
- three trumpets?
- four cats?

d What has got ...
- a great CD player?
- good games?

3 Cover the texts. Talk about each person's favourite thing.

Kemal's favourite thing is his car. It's German. It's really fast and it's got a fantastic CD player. It's silver and it's comfortable.

Pronunciation

1 Look at Kemal and Lisa's section of the tapescript on page 165. Change the full verbs to short forms.

's
It ~~is~~ a German car.

2 T2.8 Listen and check. Practise saying the short forms.

4 a Write about your favourite thing(s).

My favourite thing is my ...
It's (American / a Honda / very old).
It's (fantastic / very important to me / beautiful).
It's got ...

b Work in small groups. Tell other students about your favourite thing.

▶ Read Language summaries D and E on page 151.

Language focus 3

Family vocabulary; Possessive 's

1 Put the family words in the box into the correct column of the table. (Write each word only once.)

brother and sister	husband and wife	sisters	cousins
boyfriend and girlfriend	grandmother and grandson		
mother and daughter	mother and son	father and daughter	

male	female	both
brother	sister	cousin

2 a Look at the famous people and their relations. Can you guess the relationship? Use the ideas in the box in exercise 1.

They aren't husband and wife!

Maybe they're cousins.

I'm sure they're brother and sister.

b T2.9 Listen and check your ideas.

Grammar

Notice:
William is Queen Elizabeth's grandson.
NOT: ~~*the grandson of Queen Elizabeth*~~

▶ Read Language summary F on page 151.

Practice

1 Write five sentences about the people in the photos.

Queen Elizabeth is Prince William's grandmother.

2 Add these words to the table at the top of the page.

children	parents	grandparents
grandfather	granddaughter	aunt
uncle	nephew	niece

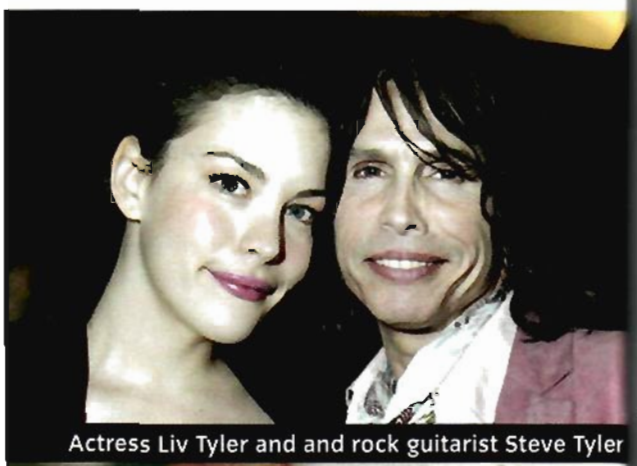
3 a Study the family words. Then try the puzzle on page 144.

b Work in pairs. Test your partner like this.

Who's your mother's father?

Your grandfather.

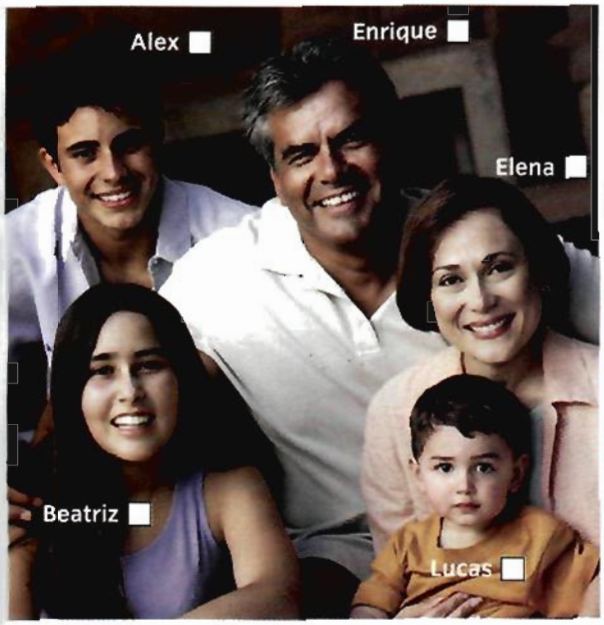
4 Do you know any more famous people who are related? Tell the class.


Actress Liv Tyler and and rock guitarist Steve Tyler

Footballer David Beckham and Lynne Beckham

Actresses Goldie Hawn and Kate Hudson

The British Queen and Prince William



Task: Talk about your family tree

Preparation: listening

1 a Find Alex above and look at the photos of his family. What are the relationships between the people, do you think?

b Look at the family tree on page 146 and check your ideas.

2 T2.10 Listen and number the people above in the order that Alex talks about them.

3 Check the words in bold. Then listen again and answer the questions. Who ...

a is an **economics** student?
b is forty-one?
c has got a **computer business**?
d is at school?
e is really **funny**?
f is a lawyer?
g is very **clever**?
h hasn't got children?
i is quite **rich**?
j is really **nice** and funny?

Task: speaking

1 *Either* Make a family tree for your family. Write in the names of at least six people.

Or Bring in some photos of your family to show other students.

2 Decide what information to give about each person in your family tree / photos. Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

▶ Useful language a

3 a Work in small groups. Show your family tree / photos to other students. Tell them about your family.

b Ask questions about the people in other students' family trees.

▶ Useful language b

Useful language

a Describing your family

I've got (two sisters / five cousins).
This is my niece/uncle.
She's (five) years old.
He's (not) married.
His wife's name's (Sara).
Their names are (Ann and Ben).

b Asking questions

Who's this?
How old is (Karina)?
What's (your uncle's) job?

Follow up: writing

1 Write a paragraph about your family.

I've got (three sisters).
My older sister's name is ... She's ...
My mother's got one brother.
His name's ... He's married to ...
They've got ... children.

2 Put it on the wall or a table for the class to read, together with your photos / family tree. Answer other students' questions.

Real life

Classroom language

1 MD Read the classroom conversations and tick (✔) the best reply.

a STUDENT: Excuse me, how do you say this word?
TEACHER: 1 I understand.
2 Erm ... it's 'uncle'.

b STUDENT: Can you say that again, please?
TEACHER: 1 Yes, it's 'uncle'.
2 No, thank you.

c STUDENT: How do you spell 'cousin'?
TEACHER: 1 She's fine, thank you.
2 C-O-U-S-I-N.

d STUDENT: Can you write it on the board, please?
TEACHER: 1 Yes, sure.
2 I don't understand.

e STUDENT: What does this word 'aunt' mean?
TEACHER: 1 I don't remember.
2 Your aunt is your mother or your father's sister.

f STUDENT: What's the English word for 'calcio'?
TEACHER: 1 I don't know.
2 It's 'football'.

g STUDENT: Can you play the recording again?
TEACHER: 1 Yes, please.
2 Yes, of course.

h STUDENT: Excuse me, what page are we on?
TEACHER: 1 Twenty-four.
2 Open your book and look at this picture.

2 T2.11 Listen and check your answers. Cross out the wrong replies.

Pronunciation

1 T2.12 Look at the tapescript on page 165. Listen to how we say these things politely.

2 Listen again and practise the polite intonation.

3 a Work in pairs. Student A: You are a student. Student B: You are the teacher. Make four short classroom conversations, like the ones in exercise 1.

b Now swap roles. Make four more conversations.

STUDY...

Learning grammar words

1 Use a monolingual dictionary to match the grammar words in A with the examples in B.

A	B
a nouns	from, on
b verbs	beautiful, rich, important
c adjectives	an uncle, a cat
d pronouns	. , ?
e prepositions	I, you, we
f syllables	dic-tion-a-ry
g short forms (contractions)	say, write
h question words	What? Where?
i the stress	comfortable
j punctuation	I've, he's, they're

2 Look through Modules 0 to 2 and find at least one more example of a–h above.

nouns: teacher, family

Pronunciation spot

The sounds /ð/ and /θ/

a T2.13 **Listen and notice the two 'th' sounds /ð/ and /θ/.**

/ð/ this, that, these, those, there, they, the, mother, father, brother

/θ/ thank you, three, thirty, thirteen, thing, Thursday

This is how you make the sounds.

b Listen again and repeat the words.

c T2.14 **Listen and repeat the eight sentences.**

PRACTISE...

1 Word groups ☐

Add three words or phrases from the box to each group.

a daughter	an aunt	a niece	beautiful	cousins
a computer	a DVD player	friends	a mobile phone	a son
friendly	a grandfather	a nephew	grandparents	clever

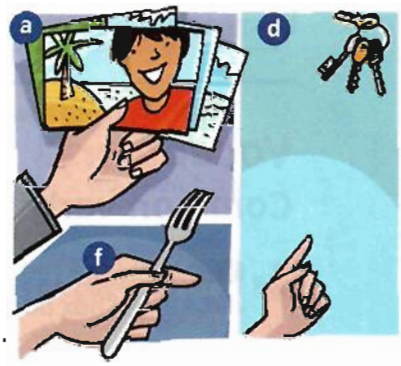
a a TV, a stereo _____ d a father, an uncle _____

b rich, fantastic _____ e children, parents _____

c a mother, a sister _____

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, pages 19 and 22.**

2 *this, that, these, those* ☐



Complete the gaps with *this, that, these* or *those*.

a Look at *these* photos of my holiday.

b Is _____ man over there okay?

c Sonia, _____ is my friend Mariko.

d Are _____ your keys?

e Are _____ glasses here yours, Samia?

f What's the English word for _____ ?

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 150.**

3 *have got* ☐

a Write questions with *you* and the correct form of *have got* or *be*.

1 *Have you got* a car?

2 _____ married?

3 _____ a big family?

4 How old _____ ?

5 _____ at university?

6 _____ a job?

7 _____ a garden?

8 _____ a pet?

b Ask and answer the questions in pairs, or write answers for yourself.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary C, page 151.**

4 's ☐

Put in apostrophes (') before the 's', where necessary.

a Are these your keys?

b Thats Annas bag.

c Shes got three sisters.

d Whats the matter?

e Hes Lauras cousin.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary G, page 151.**

5 Classroom language ☐

Put the words in the correct order.

a do you spell / how / 'nephew'? *How do you spell 'nephew'?*

b again / say that / can you?

c what / mean / does this word?

d do you say / how / this word?

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 24.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 160 to check what you know!

MODULE 3

Everyday life

- Present simple (positive, negative, questions and short answers): *I, you, we, they*
- Vocabulary: Common verbs
- Reading and vocabulary: *Life in Britain*
- Listening: Life in Australia
- Real life: Days and times
- Vocabulary and speaking: Daily routines
- Task: Find things in common

Vocabulary

Common verbs

1 MD Write the verbs in the circles below. Which verbs in the box do the photos show?

work go ~~live~~ speak study eat drink

a I *live* in a flat. / in a big city. / in London.

b I ___ for a big company. / long hours.

c I ___ English. / Russian.

d I ___ to English classes. / out a lot.

e I ___ at university. / a lot. / economics.

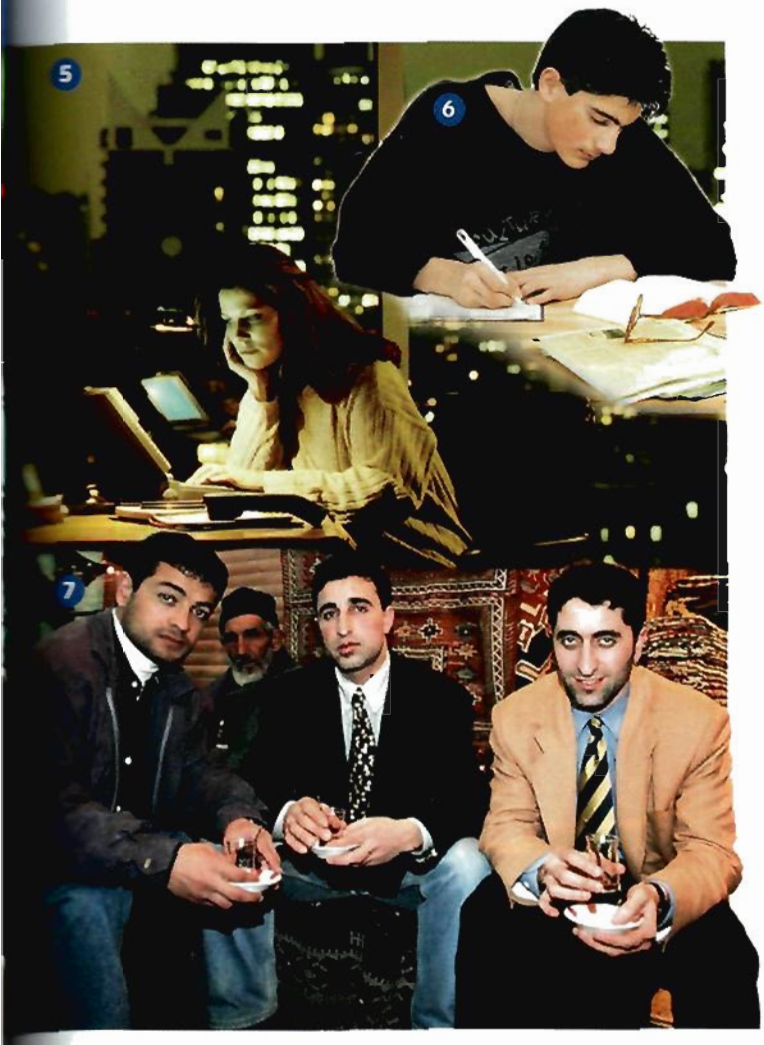
f I ___ fish. / a lot of chocolate. / in restaurants a lot.

g I ___ tea. / coffee.

2 T3.1 Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences.

3 MD Add these words and phrases to the diagrams in exercise 1.

Chinese meat law with my parents in an office
beer lemonade in a small town to the cinema a lot



Language focus 1

Present simple questions

T3.2 Listen and answer the questions for yourself.

✔ = Yes, I do. ✘ = No, I don't.

a ☐ c ☐ e ☐ g ☐
b ☐ d ☐ f ☐ h ☐

Grammar

1 Present simple: *I, you, we, they*

I	live in Dubai.
You	work long hours.
We	go to English classes.
They	speak Italian.

2 Questions and short answers

To make questions and negatives we use *do/don't*.

Do	you	speak English?	Yes, I do.
		live in a flat?	No, I don't.

▶ Read Language summary A on page 151.

Practice

Pronunciation

1 Listen to the questions in Recording 2 again. We stress the important words. *Do you* /djə/ is weak.

/djə/ • • •
Do you live in a big city?

/djə/ • • •
Do you go to English classes?

2 Look at the tapescript on page 166. Practise saying the questions.

1 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

Do you live in a big city? — No, I don't.

2 a Look back at the diagrams on page 26. Write five more questions.

Do you go to the cinema a lot?

b Walk around the class. Ask and answer your questions.

3 T3.3 Can you complete the questions and answers? Listen and check.

a A: _____ you _____ meat?
B: No, _____ _____ . I only _____ fish.

b A: _____ _____ and your family _____ _____ _____ house?
B: No, _____ _____ . We _____ _____ a flat.

c A: _____ your parents _____ English?
B: Yes, _____ _____ .

d A: Do you _____ _____ a big company?
B: No, I _____ . I _____ _____ a small company.

e A: _____ _____ and your friends _____ _____ _____ cinema a lot?
B: Yes, _____ _____ . We love the cinema.

4 a Write eight true sentences about yourself, your parents, your family, or you and your friends.

I study economics at university.
We live a flat.
My parents work long hours.
We go out a lot.
They eat a lot of chocolate.

b Compare your sentences with a partner.

Reading and vocabulary

1 a MD Which things can you see in the photos?

the beach	a flat	a pub	a shop	the city centre
a house	a garden	an office	a swimming pool	
a school	a restaurant	a supermarket		

b T3.4 Listen and practise the words.

2 Do the places in the photos look the same or different in your country?

The school is the same.

The house is very different.

3 MD Match the words and phrases in A and B.

	A	B
a	start	a snack
b	open	in the morning
c	a big meal	go home
d	in the evening	close
e	go to work	finish

4 Read about life in Britain. Complete the text with a word or phrase from exercise 3.

Life in Britain

HOMES

Most British people live in houses not flats. Most houses have gardens.

DAILY LIFE

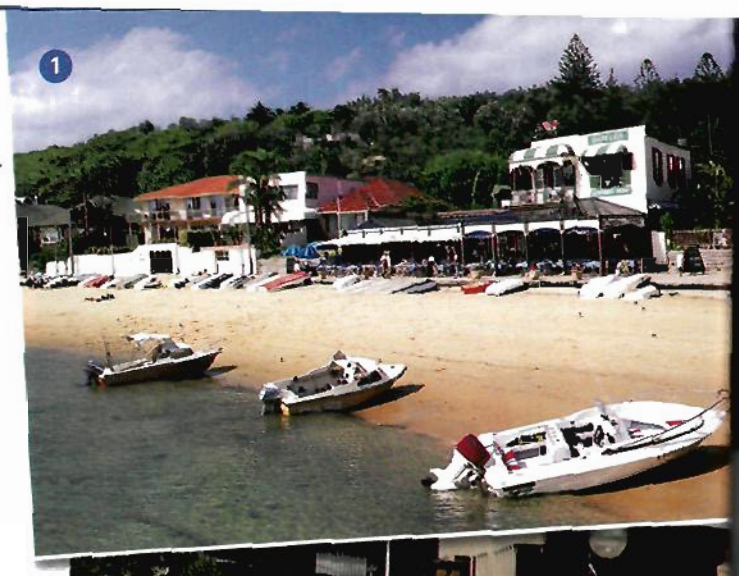
Most office workers (a) go to work at about nine o'clock in the morning and finish at about five or six (b) _____. People don't go home for lunch. People usually eat a big meal in the evening – they just have (c) _____ at lunchtime.

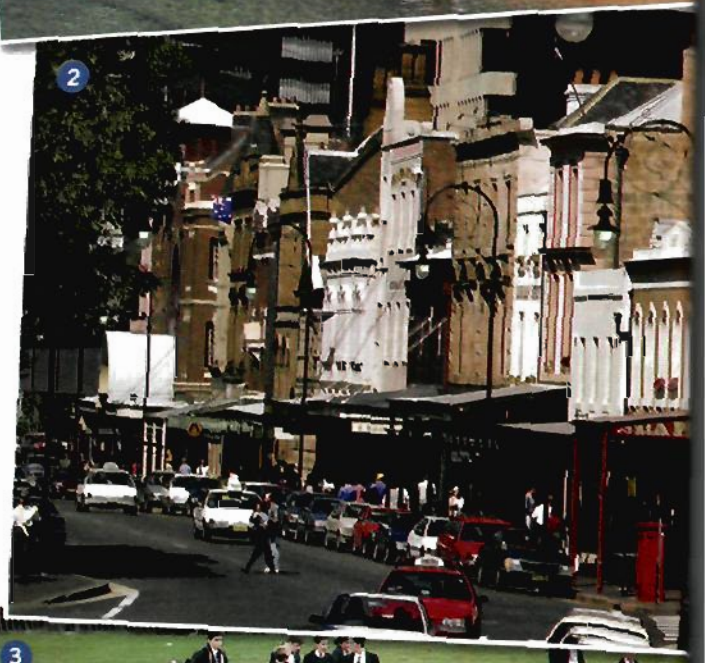
SCHOOL LIFE

Children start school at about nine o'clock and (d) _____ at about half past three. Most children have lunch at school. Children (e) _____ school when they are four or five years old and leave when they are sixteen or eighteen.

SHOPS AND RESTAURANTS

Shops (f) _____ at about nine o'clock in the morning and (g) _____ at about six in the evening. Normally, they don't close for lunch. Most shops open on a Sunday, too. Many supermarkets stay open twenty-four hours, but most pubs and restaurants close at about eleven o'clock in the evening.





Listening

Life in Australia

1 T3.5 Nicky is asking about daily life in Australia. Listen and number the questions.

a Do most people live in flats or houses?
b What time do children go to school?
c What time do people start work?
d Do they go home for lunch?
e When do shops open and close in Australia? 1
f What time do pubs and restaurants close?
g What do people do at the weekend?

2 Listen again. Tick the sentences which are true.

a Shops open at 9.00 and close at about 5.00. ✔
b Supermarkets close at midnight.
c Pubs and restaurants close at about eleven o'clock.
d Most people go home for lunch.
e People have lunch in cafés.
f Children finish school at half past eight.
g At the weekend most people go to the beach.
h In the city centre, people live in houses.
i A lot of people have got swimming pools.

Language focus 2

Present simple (positive and negative)

Look back at the text about life in Britain. Find three positive sentences and two negative sentences.

Grammar

Complete the gaps.

⊕	I	live in a house.
	You	go to work at about 9.00.
	We	have lunch in a café.
	They	start school at about 9.00.
⊖	I	_____ have a big lunch.
	You	_____ work in an office.
	We	_____ live in a flat.
	They	_____ go to school.

▶ Read Language summary B on page 152.

Practice

1 Complete the sentences for your country. Use either the positive or negative form. Correct the information, where necessary.

Most people don't live in houses. They live in flats.

Life in my country

A Most people _____ (live) in houses.
B Most people _____ (have) gardens.
C Most office workers _____ (start) work at 9.00.
D Most people _____ (go) home for lunch.
E Most people _____ (have) a big meal in the evening.
F Children _____ (go) to school in the afternoon.
G Most young people _____ (leave) school at sixteen.
H Most shops _____ (stay) open twenty-four hours.
I Most shops _____ (close) at lunchtime.
J Most shops _____ (open) on Sundays.
K Restaurants _____ (close) at eleven in the evening.

2 a Write about three things that are different between your country and Britain.

In Britain children start school at about nine o'clock, but in Poland they start at eight o'clock.

b Write about three things that are the same in Britain and Australia.

Children finish school at half past three.

3 Use the ideas below to make six true sentences about yourself. Compare sentences with a partner.

live in a house	have a swimming pool in my garden
have lunch at home	have a big meal in the evening
eat a lot of meat	drink a lot of coffee
speak Spanish	study a lot at the weekend
go to restaurants a lot	work in an office

I don't have lunch at home.
I have lunch in a café.

Real life

Days and times

1 a T3.6 It's four o'clock in London. Listen and mark the time around the world on the clocks.

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

What time is it in Los Angeles?

It's nine o' clock.

2 Match the times with the watches.

a It's twenty to eleven.
b It's quarter past eight.
c It's five past six.
d It's twenty-five past three.
e It's half past nine.
f It's ten to four.

3 T3.7 Write the times. Then listen and check.

a 9.55 five to ten
b 7.15 _____
c 9.30 _____
d 8.40 _____
e 6.45 _____
f 12.05 _____
g 2.45 _____
h 3.10 _____
i 9.25 _____
j 7.50 _____
k 2.55 _____
l 9.35 _____

Pronunciation

1 Listen again and notice the stress. *to* is weak.

• /tə/ • • •
five to ten quarter past seven

2 Practise saying the times.

4 Work in pairs. Student A: Look at the TV guide on page 140. Student B: Look at the TV guide on page 142.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

a Do banks open at the weekend in your country? What time do they normally open and close?
b Do shops in your country open on Sunday? What time do they open and close?
c Do people have a big lunch on Sunday? What time do they normally have lunch?
d Which days do you have English lessons? What time do your lessons start and finish?

▶ Read Language summary C on page 152.

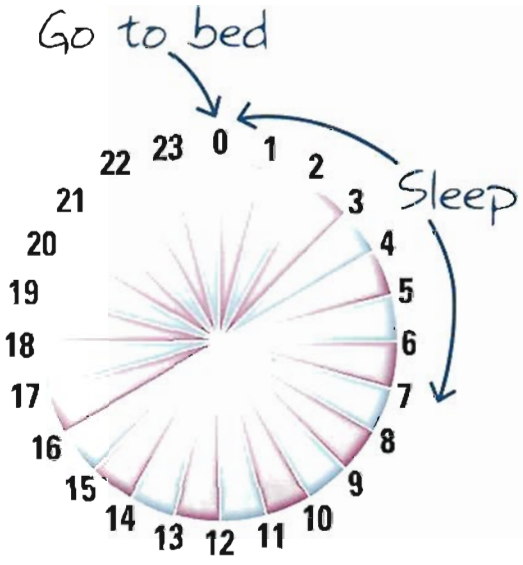
Vocabulary and speaking

Daily routines

1 MD Tick (✔) the things below that you do every day. Cross out the things you don't do.

sleep ✔	go to school/university
get up early	catch the bus
go to bed late	go to work
have breakfast	come home
have lunch	watch TV
have dinner	have a bath
read the newspaper	have a shower

2 Write the activities in exercise 1 in the correct place for you on a 24-hour clock.



3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer about your typical day.

What time do you get up? — At about seven o'clock.

4 Work with a new partner. Use the prompts on the right to make questions. Ask and answer.

Do you have breakfast at home? — Yes, I do. — Sometimes.

5 Write a paragraph about yourself and your life.

I study/work ... (economics / for a big company)
I get up at ...
I have breakfast/lunch/dinner ... (at home / at work)
I come home at ... (about six o'clock)
I go to bed at ...
I go to English classes on ... (Tuesday)
I study a lot ... (in the evening / at the weekend)

Task: Find things in common

Preparation: listening

1 T3.8 Listen and number the topics your hear 1–7.

nationality ☐ brothers and sisters ☐ age ☐
where you live ☐ meat ☐ breakfast ☐
married or single? ☐

2 Listen again and tick (✔) the topics if the speakers have something in common and write a cross (✘) if they are different.

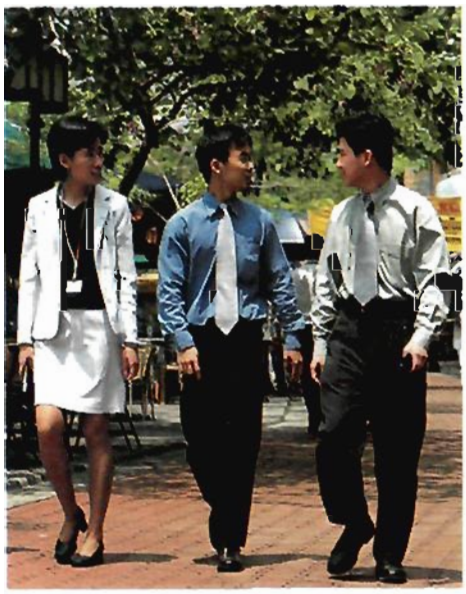
3 Look at the four conversations. Which speakers are the same? Which are different?

a A: I'm a student.
B: Me, too.

b A: I don't have breakfast.
B: Really? I do.

c A: I'm not married.
B: Me, neither.

d A: I get up very early.
B: Oh, I don't.



Task: speaking

1 Work in pairs. Use the prompts below to write eight questions to ask another student.

- family
- age
- school/university/work
- where he/she lives
- languages
- daily routine

▶ Useful language a

2 Work with a new partner. Ask and answer your questions. Try to find five things in common.

▶ Useful language b

3 Tell the class three things you have in common with your partner.

▶ Useful language c

Useful language

a Asking questions

Are you (a student)?
Have you got (a pet)?
Do you (go to bed late)?
Do you work (long hours)?
Do you eat (meat)?
Do you speak (German)?
What time do you (get up)?

b Finding things in common

Me, too.
Me, neither.
How about you?

c Telling the class

We both live with our parents.
We don't get up early.

STUDY...

Remembering spelling

1 Many words in English have double consonants, but you can't hear the difference between double and single consonants. Underline the double consonants in these words.

office	holiday
wallet	address
business	normally
cousin	camera
dinner	tissues
married	parents
bottle	waitress

2 You have two minutes to study the words and remember the double consonants.

3 T3.9 Listen and write down the fourteen words you hear. Be careful with the spelling!

Pronunciation spot

Silent syllables

a T3.10 Listen and count the syllables you hear.

chocolate 2	favourite
breakfast	Saturday
camera	business
different	comfortable
restaurant	dictionary

b Cross through the silent syllables like this:

chocolate

c Listen again and repeat.

PRACTISE...

1 Common verbs ☐

Match the pairs of verbs.

finish	~~drink~~	have breakfast	~~close~~
go home	read a book	study	go to bed

a eat drink
b open close
c go to work _____
d work _____
e start _____
f get up _____
g have lunch _____
h watch TV _____

▶ Need to check? Vocabulary, pages 28 and 31.

2 Verb forms ☐

Complete the gaps with *do/don't, are/aren't* or *have/haven't*.

a '_Do_ you live in a big city?' 'No, we _____.'
b '_____ you got brothers and sisters?'
'I've got a brother but I _____ got a sister.'
c Where _____ you work?
d How old _____ your children?
e Marek and Monica _____ married. They're just friends.

▶ Need to check? Language summaries A and B, pages 151 and 152.

3 Vocabulary ☐

Circle the odd one out.

a coffee / (meat) / tea
b a flat / a house / an office
c a bath / a garden / a shower
d a newspaper / a school / a university
e a city / a shop / a town
f a beach / a café / a restaurant

▶ Need to check? Reading, Vocabulary and Listening, pages 28 and 29.

4 Times ☐

Write the times.

a 1.25 twenty-five past one
b 3.30 _____
c 6.15 _____
d 5.10 _____
e 11.00 _____
f 5.45 _____
g 9.35 _____
h 3.55 _____

▶ Need to check? Real life, page 30.

5 Prepositions ☐

Complete the gaps with *in, at* or *on*.

a Do you catch a bus _in_ the morning?
b Where are you normally ___ four o'clock ___ the afternoon?
c Do you study ___ the weekend?
d What time do you get up ___ Sundays?
e Do you read in bed ___ night?

▶ Need to check? Language summary C, page 152.

REMEMBER! Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 160 to check what you know!

MODULE 4

Loves and hates

- Present simple: *he* and *she*; *like* ...*ing*, *questions*
- Activity verbs and adverbs of frequency
- Listening: Celebrity loves and hates
- *Vocabulary: Activities*
- Reading: *An American star in London ... and a British star in Hollywood*
- Task: Find an e-mail friend
- Real life: Asking politely

Listening

Celebrity loves and hates

1 Match the things in the box to the pictures. Which do you like / do you hate / are you frightened of?

dog	doll	clown	crowd	spider
TV	flying	doing housework		

2 T4.1 The people in the photos love or hate these things. Listen and match the people to the things.

3 Listen again. Tick (✔) the things they love and write a cross (✘) next to the things they hate. (One person hates three of the things!)

4 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

loves	hates	goes	has
doesn't have	~~doesn't watch~~		

a Cameron Diaz *doesn't watch* TV.
b She _____ a TV in her house.
c Johnny Depp _____ clowns.
d Harrison Ford _____ doing housework.
e Dean Cain never _____ on planes.
f Britney Spears _____ hundreds of dolls.

Language focus 1

Present simple: *he* and *she*; *like ...ing*; Activities

Grammar

⊕	⊖
He hates spiders.	*He doesn't like clowns.* (= does not)
She loves dolls.	*She doesn't watch TV.*

Notice these *he/she* forms:

have	*She has hundreds of dolls.*
go	*He never goes on planes.*
do	*He often does the housework.*

▶ Read Language summary A on page 152.

Practice

1 a Work in pairs. Close your books. Test your partner.

Cameron Diaz. — She doesn't like TV.

b T4.2 Look at the tapescript on page 166. Listen and practise the positive and negative verbs in sentences.

2 a MD Match the words to the pictures.

cats computer games cooking cycling driving reading running salad swimming

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer what your partner likes and doesn't like. Use the pictures on these pages.

Do you like cooking? — No, I don't. I hate it.

3 a Use the ideas below to write about yourself on a piece of paper. Give your paper to the teacher.

FACT FILE

Food and drink
I love ... I also like ... I don't like ...

Sports and activities
I love ... and ... I think ... is okay I hate ...

Other things
I love ... I hate ...

NAME: _____

b Your teacher will give you another student's paper. Tell the class about this person. The other students guess who it is.

This person loves Italian food. She also likes playing basketball and watching football. She doesn't like dogs and she hates spiders. Who is it?

Pronunciation

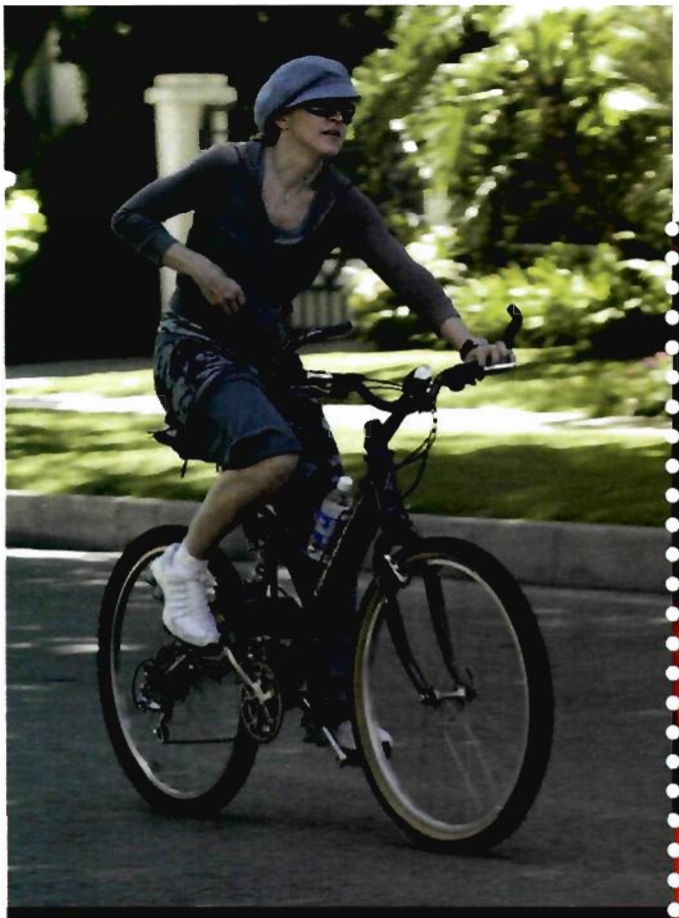
1 T4.3 Look at the tapescript on page 166 and listen to some third person forms in sentences. How many syllables are there: 1, 2 or 3?
likes 1 watches 2

2 Practise the verb forms. Then practise the sentences.

Reading

1 Look at the photos. Do you know who they are?

2 Read the text quickly. What nationality is each person? Where do they live?



An American star in London ...

There are many Americans in Britain, but the most famous is pop singer Madonna. She lives in London with her British husband, film director Guy Ritchie, and sends her children to school in Britain, too.

So what does she like about London? 'The theatre, the art, the architecture ... and I love the pubs. We often go to our local pub with friends. It's really fun.' She also loves cycling in London parks with her children.

And what does she think about British people? 'Americans work more than the British, but Europeans enjoy their free time more than Americans, and I really like that.' So does she miss the USA? 'I miss friends,' she says.

3 a MD Check the words in bold. Then read the text again. Who ...

1 goes to the pub a lot?
2 comes from an **ordinary** town?
3 likes cycling with her children?
4 loves **rugby**?
5 thinks Americans work very hard?
6 **enjoys** the **art** and **theatre** in Britain?
7 **misses** her family?
8 misses her friends?

b Compare your answers with a partner.

... and a British star in Hollywood

Actress Catherine Zeta Jones comes from an ordinary family and a very ordinary town – Swansea in Wales. But these days she enjoys the life of a Hollywood film star. She lives in a big house in Beverly Hills with her husband, billionaire Hollywood actor Michael Douglas and their two children. The couple also have homes in Los Angeles, Colorado, New York, Bermuda and Majorca.

So with all this, does she miss Wales? The answer is yes. 'Catherine's a big star these days, but she still loves Welsh rugby,' says an old friend. She also misses her family and often goes back to see them. So now she and her husband have got another house ... this time in Swansea!

Language focus 2

Present simple questions: *he* and *she*

Grammar

1 **Questions and short answers with *he* and *she***

Does she like London?
Yes, she does.
Does she miss the USA?
No, she doesn't.
(NOT: Does she likes?)

2 ***Wh-* questions**

What does she think about British people?
Where does she come from?

▶ Read Language summary B on page 152.

Practice

1 a Use the prompts to make questions.

1 where Madonna live?
Where does Madonna live?
2 what her husband do?
3 she like Britain?
4 what she love?
5 she miss the USA?
6 where Catherine Zeta Jones come from?
7 where she live now?
8 she go back to Wales?
9 why she miss Wales?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

Where does Madonna live?

She lives in London.

2 a MD Choose the correct verb form.

This (1) is / are my friend Sarinder. He (2) 's / 're at college with me. He (3) come / comes from Delhi in India, but now he (4) live / lives in Brighton with his parents and brother. His parents (5) is / are both doctors at our local hospital. After Sarinder (6) finish / finishes college, his parents (7) want / wants to go back to India because Sarinder's grandfather (8) own / owns a small children's hospital near Delhi, and they (9) want / wants to work there.

Every year they (10) go / goes back to India and (11) stay / stays with Sarinder's grandparents. Sarinder (12) love / loves Brighton because he (13) 's got / 've got lots of friends here, but he (14) live / lives in a very small house here and sometimes he (15) miss / misses his grandparents' big house in Delhi. They (16) 's got / 've got a fantastic garden with monkeys in it!

b T4.4 Listen and check your answers.

3 a Think of a person from another country, city or culture (a person you know or a famous person).

b Work in pairs. Use the prompts to ask your partner questions about the person.

What's his name?

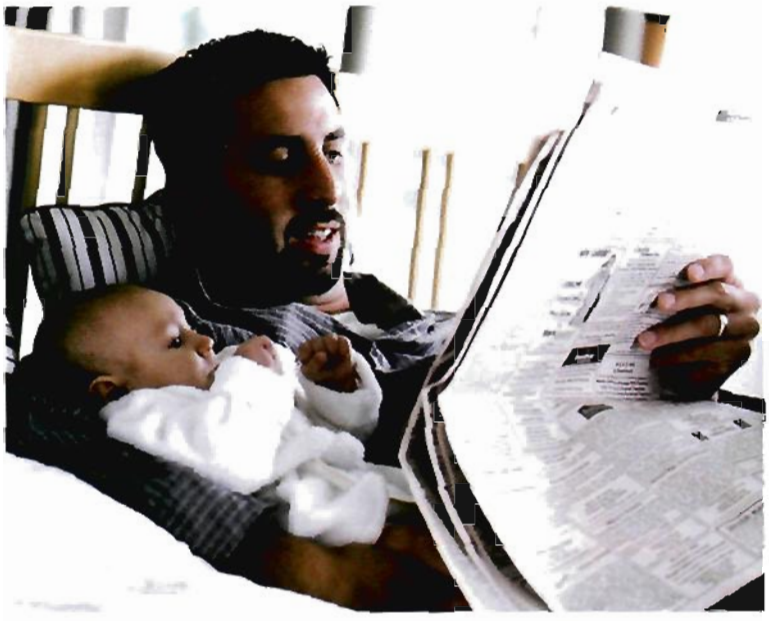
It's David.

a What ... his/her name?
b Where ... he/she come from?
c Where ... he/she live (in your country)?
d ... he/she here with his/her family?
e ... he/she work in your country?
f ... he/she like (your country)?
g ... he/she like the weather and the food?
h ... he/she miss his/her own country?

4 Write a paragraph about the person in exercise 3a.

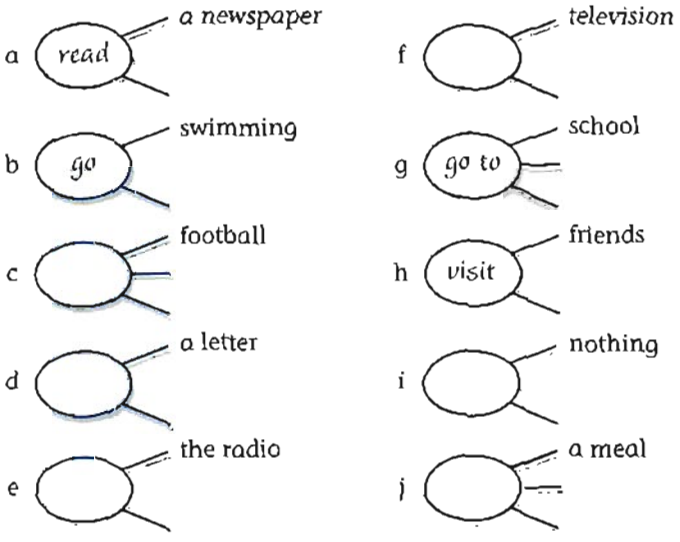
Language focus 3

Activity verbs and adverbs of frequency



1 MD Write the verbs in the circles below.

play listen to write watch have do



2 a MD Add these words to the diagrams in exercise 1. (There may be more than one possibility.)

shopping	a magazine	the cinema	an e-mail
the guitar	CDs	a video	computer games
a restaurant	a shower	your relatives	your homework

b Practise saying the phrases above. Then work in pairs and test each other.

play

play football ... play the guitar ... play computer games

3 a Put the adverbs in the correct place.

usually often sometimes not ... often

0% ← → 100%
never always

b Which sentences are true for you?

1 I often go shopping on Saturday.
2 I always read the newspaper in the morning.
3 I never watch football on television.
4 I don't often write letters.
5 I usually listen to the radio in the car.

Grammar

Look back at the sentences in exercise 3b and complete the rules.

Adverbs of frequency (*always, often, never, etc.*) *come before / after* the verb in positive sentences and come before / after *don't* in negative sentences.

▶ Read language summary C on page 152.

Practice

1 Write sentences about something ...

- you never do.
- you sometimes do in the evening.
- you often do at the weekend.
- you usually do in the morning.
- you always do on Sunday.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions below.

Do you ever go to concerts?

Not often. How about you?

Do you ever ...

- go to concerts?
- visit relatives at the weekend?
- read poetry?
- listen to the radio at night?
- go swimming in the sea?
- play tennis?
- read computer magazines?
- do your homework on the bus?

Address: http://www.findmeafriend.com go

Favorites History Search Scrapbook Page Holder

Findmeafriend.com

friends | e-mails | dating | family tree

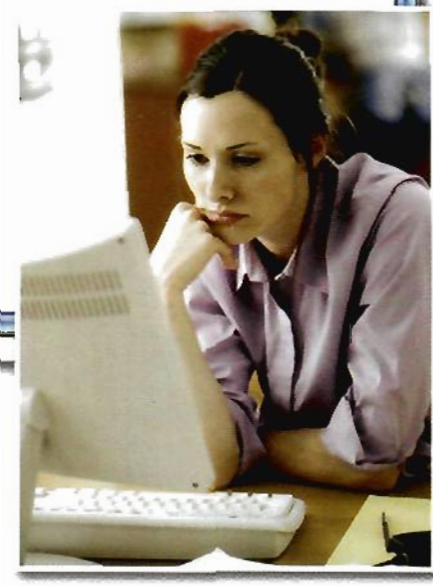
Hi! My name's Teresa and I'm from Cork, a city in Ireland. I'm a music student at the university here, and I'm twenty-one years old.

I LOVE all types of music, of course! I like both writing and playing. I play the piano and guitar and write songs, too. I also like going to the cinema, reading, the Internet, dogs, driving my car, going out with my friends, travelling, speaking Spanish. (I study Spanish at university, too.)

I HATE football (and all types of sport), spiders, cats, eating meat and doing nothing!

I love writing and receiving e-mails and I want to make friends from all over the world. Please write!

MAKE MORE ROOM FOR FRIENDS AND MEMORIES



Task: Find an e-mail friend

Preparation: reading

Teresa wants to find friends from other countries. Read what she writes about herself on the Internet. Answer the questions.

a Where is Teresa from?
b Is she a student?
c How old is she?
d Does she like music?
e Does she enjoy reading?
f Does she have any hobbies?

Task: reading and speaking

1 Four people write to Teresa. Work in pairs.

Student A: Look at page 138.
a Ask Student B about Peter and Sofia. Complete the table.
b Answer Student B's questions about Marina and Joao.

Student B: Look at page 140.
a Answer Student A's questions about Peter and Sofia.
b Ask Student A about Marina and Joao. Complete the table.

▶ Useful language a

	Peter	Sofia	Marina	Joao
nationality/city				
age				
occupation				
interests				
languages				

Useful language

a Asking for information

Where is ... from?
How old is ...?
Is ... a student?
What ... like?
What languages ... speak?

b Discussing

I think ... is best because (he likes music, too).
... isn't good because (he doesn't like classical music).
I agree. / I don't agree.
Maybe ...
Yes, but ...

2 Who is the best e-mail friend for Teresa? Compare answers with other students. Do you agree?

▶ Useful language b

Real life

Asking politely

1 T4.5 Look at the five conversations in a café. Match the first lines of each to the pictures. Then listen and check.

1 *Excuse me. I'd like the bill, please.*
2 Do you want milk?
3 Excuse me. I'd like three lemonades, please.
4 *I'd like one of those, please.*
5 Do you want a drink?

Pronunciation

1 T4.6 listen to the sentences from exercise 1. Notice how the speakers use intonation to sound polite.
Excuse me. I'd like the bill, please.
Do you want milk?

2 Practise the sentences, copying the intonation.

2 Work in pairs. Practise the conversations.

3 Imagine you are in a café. Take turns to ask and answer politely, using the ideas below.

Tell the waiter you want:
- an ice cream
- another drink
- more milk
- a clean spoon

Ask if your partner wants:
- sugar
- another coffee
- a sandwich
- a tissue

STUDY...

Finding spelling in a dictionary (1)

1 MD **You can use your mini-dictionary to find the spelling of *he/she* Present simple forms.**

vis·it /'vɪzɪt/ *verb* (visits) visiting, visited, have visited
1 to go and spend time with someone: *Granny is visiting us next weekend.* | *I went to visit Simon in hospital.* | *You must* ***come and visit*** *me some time.*

2 Use your mini-dictionary to find the *he/she* forms of these verbs.

a run
b finish
c swim
d miss
e work
f fly
g say
h watch

3 Complete the rules with the phrases in the box.

take 's'	take 'es'	change to 'ies'

a *Most verbs (e.g. work)* _____ .
b Verbs that end with -ss, -sh, -ch (e.g. *watch*) _____ .
c Verbs that end with consonant + y (e.g. *fly*) _____ .
d Verbs that end with vowel + y (e.g. *play*) _____ .

4 Use the rules to write the *he/she* forms. Use your mini-dictionary to check.

a eat
b leave
c study
d stay
e catch
f carry

Pronunciation spot

Words ending in *s*

a T4.7 **Listen to the three different pronunciations of words that end with *s*.**

/s/ books, likes, Mark's
/z/ newspapers, loves, Anna's
/ɪz/ places, watches, Tomas's

b T4.8 **Listen and add the words to the categories above.**

c Practise saying all the words.

PRACTISE...

1 Present simple *he/she* forms ☐

Write the *he/she* forms of these verbs.

a know knows
b study _____
c listen _____
d watch _____
e do _____
f hate _____
g go _____
h work _____
i have _____

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 152.**

2 Present simple auxiliaries ☐

Complete the gaps with *do/don't* or *does/doesn't*.

a '*Do* you like swimming?' 'No, I _____ .'
b What time _____ the film finish?
c '_____ your parents live near here?' 'Yes, they _____ .'
d Where _____ your boyfriend work?
e '_____ your mother speak English?' 'No, she _____ .'

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 152.**

3 Words that go together ☐

Match words to make phrases.

a play	dinner	e go	a restaurant
b visit	the violin	f go to	a CD
c have	your aunt	g listen to	the newspaper
d do	your homework	h read	shopping

▶ **Need to check? Language focus 3, page 38.**

4 Adverbs of frequency ☐

Put the words in the correct order.

a in the evening / never / Ellen / studies *Ellen never studies in the evening.*
b me / you / listen to / never
c I / catch / don't / the bus / often
d me / usually / on Sunday / my sister / visits

▶ **Need to check? Language summary C, page 152.**

5 Activities ☐

Unjumble the letters to make activities.

a PISOPHNG *shopping*
b GOKONCI c_____
c NNNIRGU r_____
d MMNIISWG s_____
e VRDIING d_____
f IEARDNG r_____

▶ **Need to check? Language focus 1, page 35.**

6 *Do you want ...? / I'd like ...* ☐

Match the two lines of the conversations.

a Do you want the sugar?	1 Of course. Just one minute.
b Do you want a dictionary?	2 Yes, please.
c I'd like another coffee, please.	3 Large ones or small ones?
d I'd like two chocolate ice creams.	4 It's okay, I've got one, thank you.

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 40.**

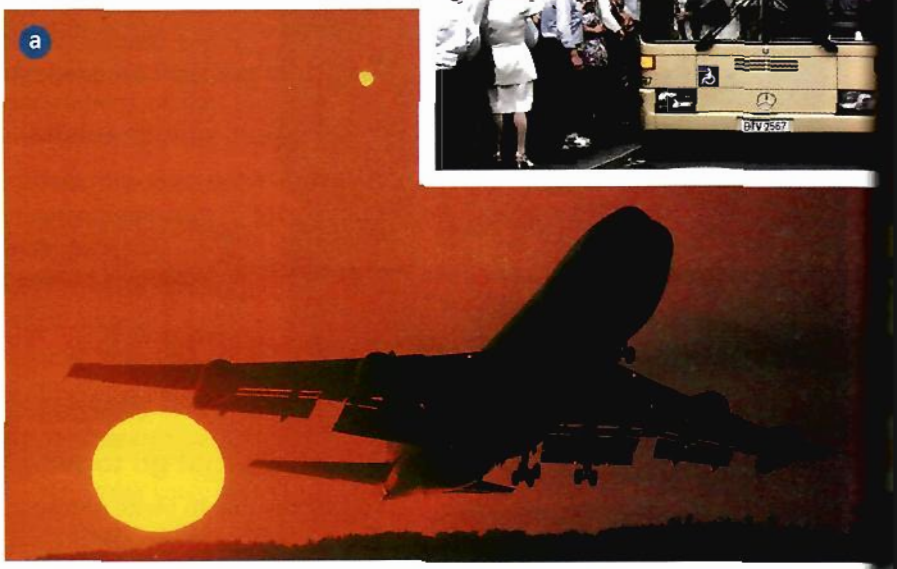
REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 161 to check what you know!

MODULE 5

Getting from A to B

- *can* and *can't*
- Articles: *a/an, the* and *zero*
- Vocabulary and reading: Transport
- Listening and vocabulary: At the airport
- Task: Complete a survey about transport
- Real life: Buying a ticket



Vocabulary and reading

Transport

1 Find these types of transport in the photos.

a motorbike a bus a train a tram
a taxi an aeroplane a car a ship
a scooter a ferry a bicycle
an underground / a subway train

2 Put the types of transport in order from fast to slow. Then compare your answers with another student.

1 = aeroplane

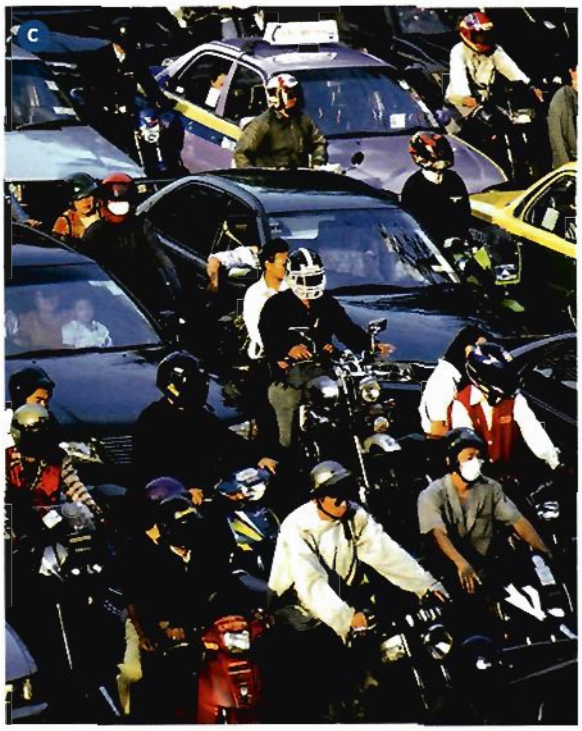
3 How do these people usually travel in your town?

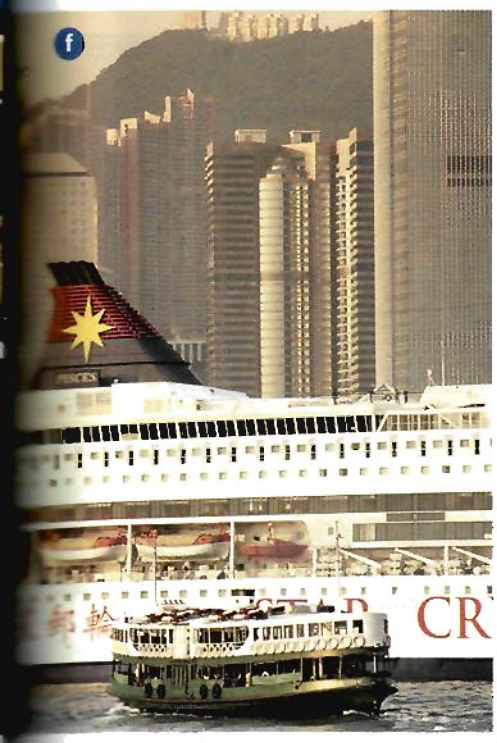
- schoolchildren
- students and young people
- businesspeople
- old people
- police officers

by car by bus on foot

4 Find these things in the photos.

people waiting in a queue passengers
a crowded train travelling fast
travelling slowly bad traffic





Transport facts!

People in most countries drive on the right – but people drive on the left in (a) _____ countries, including Japan, India, Australia and Britain.

In the USA (b) _____ people in every thousand drive a car. In Japan, it's 640 and in Germany it's 570. More than (c) _____ people in the world ride a bicycle!

In Tokyo, people never wait for more than (d) _____ minutes for an underground train. The only problem is it's often difficult to get on or off a train because they're so crowded!

(e) _____ people fly to Hartsfield Airport in Atlanta, USA every year! (That's about one hundred and fifty people every minute!)

In China, the 30 km journey from Shanghai city centre to Pudong Airport takes only (f) _____ minutes on the new Magnetic Levitation (Mag Lev) train.

Most people in Moscow go to work by underground. The Moscow Metro has 165 stations and about (g) _____ passengers every day. The stations in the city centre are very beautiful.

Every day more than (h) _____ people travel into the centre of London. About 20% drive, 77% take the train or the bus, and only (i) _____ % walk to work!

In Italy, a country of 57 million people, 9 million people have scooters. In Rome, (j) _____ people ride scooters so they can travel fast in the city traffic.

5 MD T5.1 Read the text. Can you guess which numbers go in the gaps? Listen and check.

1,000,000 (one million)		100,000,000 (one hundred million)		8	9,000,000
3	59	77,000,000	5	740	500,000 (five hundred thousand)

6 a Look back at the text and choose the correct words to go together.

1 drive / ride a car
2 drive / ride a bicycle
3 wait / wait for a train
4 get on / in a train
5 get off / out a train
6 fly in / to Atlanta
7 go with / by underground
8 take / go a train or a bus
9 walk to / in work

b Work in pairs. Test your partner.

drive

drive a car

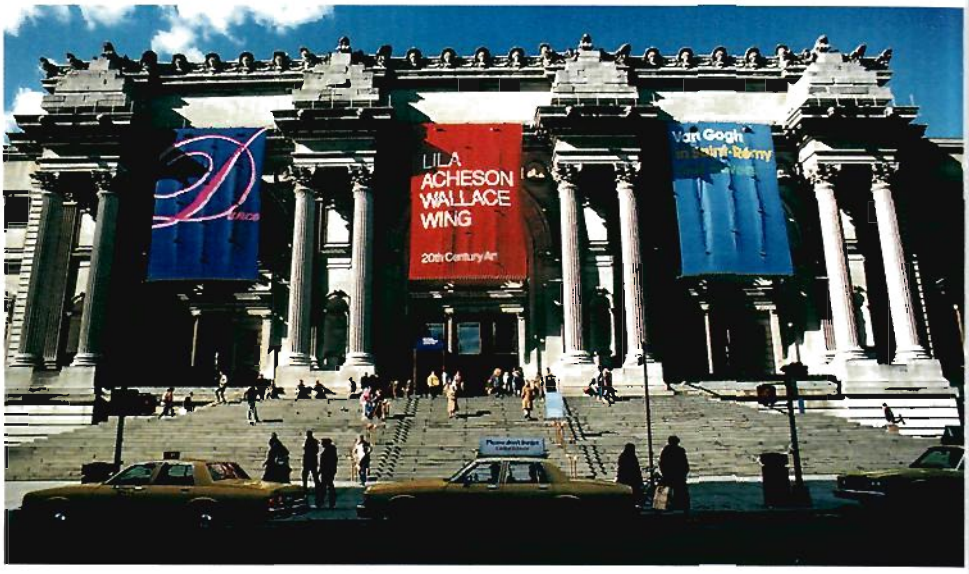
7 Which sentences are true for your country? Correct the false ones. Then compare with other students.

a Most people drive small cars. *False. Most people drive big cars!*
b People always wait in a queue to get on a bus.
c People often fly from one city to another.
d Not many people walk to the shops.
e A lot of people ride bicycles to work.
f Traffic is a problem all day.
g The buses are very crowded.
h Taxis drive very slowly.

▶ Read Language summary A on page 152.

Language focus 1
can and *can't*

Karen is at the Metropolitan Museum of Art in Manhattan, New York. She has $25 and it's ten past three. She wants to be at JFK Airport at half past four.



1 Look at the photos and read about Karen. Where is she? Where does she want to go?

2 Read about four ways to get to JFK Airport and complete the table.

type(s) of transport	time (in hours/ minutes)	cost
1		
2		
3		
4		

3 Work in pairs. Decide the best way for Karen to go to the airport.

4 T5.2 Listen to someone working out how she should travel. Was your answer the same?

Grammar

Complete the gaps with *can* or *can't* (*cannot*).

+ She _____ take a bus at twenty past three.
− She _____ take a taxi because she's only got $25.
? _____ she take the subway to the airport?

▶ Read Language summary B on page 153.

Pronunciation

T5.3 Listen and mark the ten sentences +, − or ? Look at the tapescript on page 167 and practise saying the sentences.

1

You can take a taxi but it is often slow because of the traffic. The journey takes about an hour and costs $35 (and also a tip of 15–20% for the driver!).

2

You can take a subway (the 'A' train) to Howard Beach-JFK Station and then a bus to the airport terminal, a journey of about 90 minutes. The subway costs $2 and the bus is free.

3

You can walk through Central Park to the Museum of Natural History (about twenty minutes). From there, you can take the subway to Howard Beach-JFK Station ($2) and then an AirTrain to JFK Airport Station ($5). It takes about an hour on the subway and another twelve minutes on the AirTrain.

4

You can take the subway to Grand Central Station. It takes five minutes and costs $2. From there you can take the New York Airport Express bus. The journey takes about an hour and costs $13. In the afternoon, the buses leave every twenty minutes at three o'clock, twenty past three, twenty to four, etc.

Practice

1 T5.4 Gina is asking about things you can and can't do in New York. Listen and mark the sentences ...

✔ if you can do this.
✘ if you can't.
? if it depends.

a travel by tram ✘
b smoke in the subway
c eat on a train
d find a taxi easily
e have five people in a taxi
f drive at sixty kilometres an hour
g ride a bicycle safely
h eat in a restaurant at midnight
i smoke in a restaurant

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer about the things in exercise 1.

Either Ask and answer about New York.

Or Ask and answer about your city/town.

Can you travel by tram in New York?

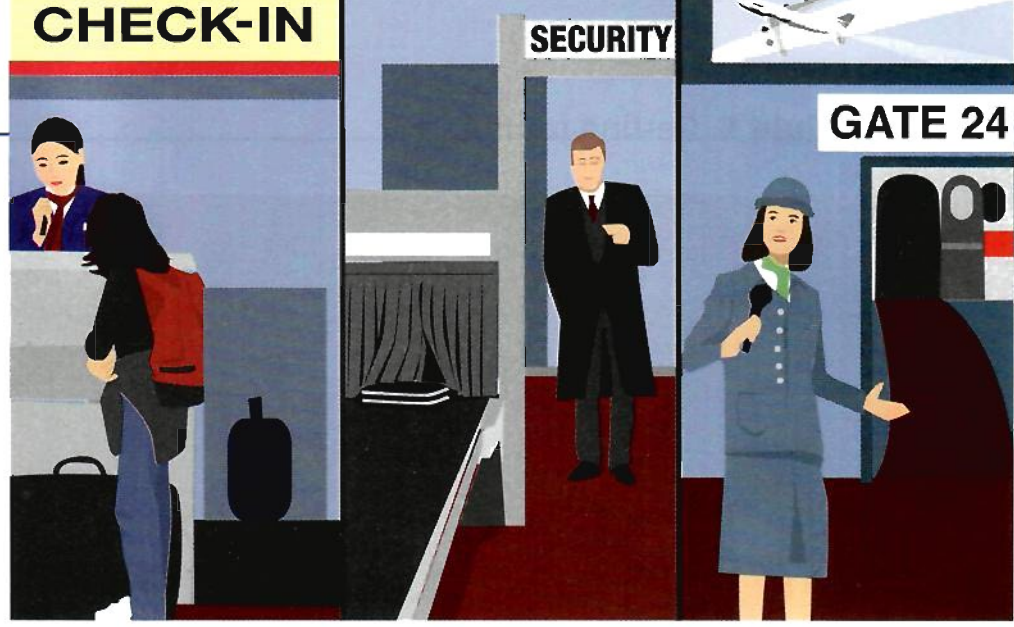
No, you can't.

Can you find a taxi easily in Hamburg?

It depends.

3 Write eight sentences about things you can and can't do in your city.

You can't smoke on buses.
You can drive in the city centre.



Listening and vocabulary

At the airport

1 Karen is at JFK Airport. Look at her travel itinerary and answer the questions.

a What times are her flights?
b Which airports do they go to?
c What are the flight numbers?

Travel Itinerary Ms Karen Davis			
Sun 02 Nov Flight AA100	Check in by 16.30 Scheduled departure: 18.30 JFK Scheduled arrival: 07.25 London Heathrow (LHR)	American Airlines Desk	Terminal X
Mon 03 Nov Flight BA0572	Check in by 08.00 Scheduled departure: 09.35 LHR Scheduled arrival: 12.30 Milan: Malpensa MXP	British Airways Desk	Terminal 1

2 MD Match the phrases in A with the meanings in B.

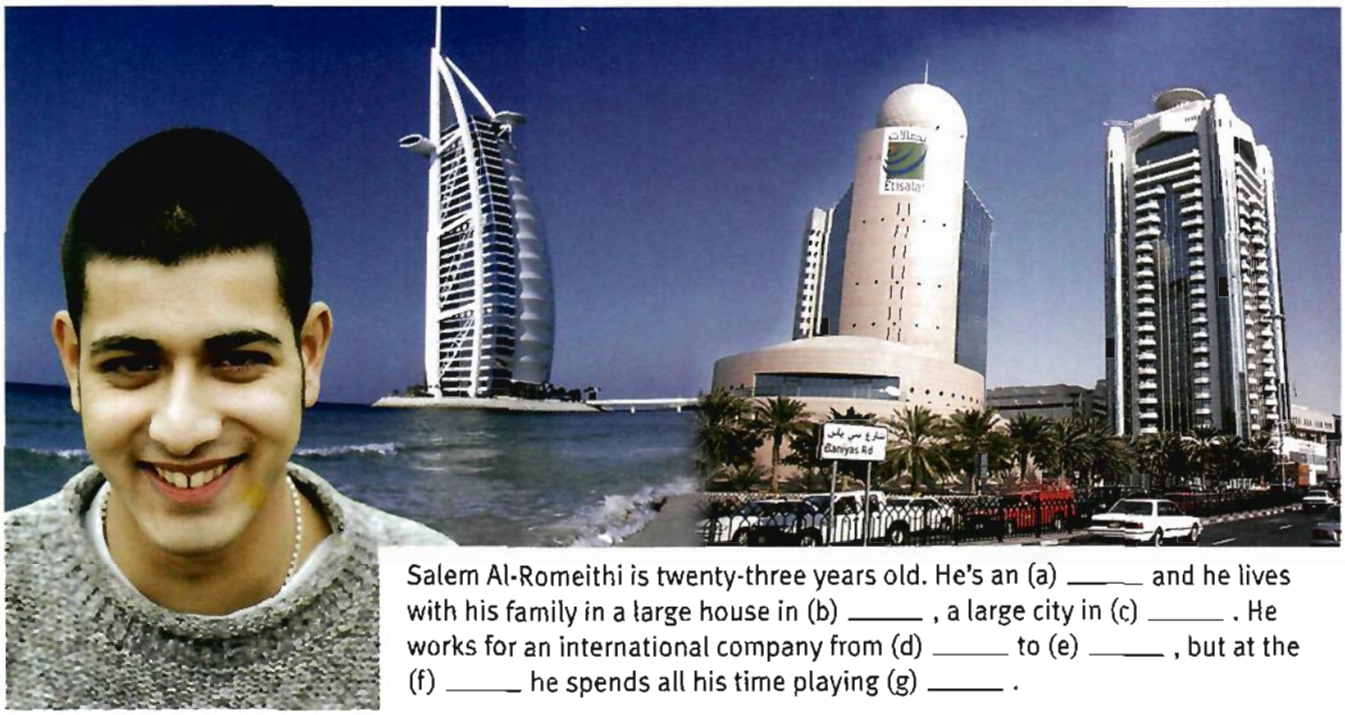
A		B	
a	in transit	1	is late
b	check in	2	go to
c	boarding	3	changing from one plane to another
d	is delayed	4	final call
e	last call	5	show your ticket and passport at a desk
f	proceed to	6	getting on (a plane)

3 a T5.5 Listen to the announcements at JFK Airport and answer the questions. (You do not need to understand every announcement.)

1 Where does Karen check in?
2 What is the problem with her flight?
3 What is the gate number for her flight?

b T5.6 Listen to the announcements at Heathrow Airport and answer the questions.

1 At Heathrow Airport, where does Karen go?
2 What is her gate number?



Salem Al-Romeithi is twenty-three years old. He's an (a) _____ and he lives with his family in a large house in (b) _____ , a large city in (c) _____ . He works for an international company from (d) _____ to (e) _____ , but at the (f) _____ he spends all his time playing (g) _____ .

Language focus 2

Articles (2): *a/an*, *the* and zero

T5.7 Look at the photos and complete the text about Salem Al-Romeithi with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

weekend	golf	the United Arab Emirates	
engineer	Saturday	Dubai	Wednesday

Grammar

1 Underline the articles *a/an/the* in the text about Salem. When do we use *an*?

2 Complete the gaps with *a/an*, *the* or zero (no word).

a we've got *a* new car, he lives in ___ apartment in ___ big city
b ___ Salem, ___ Mrs Wilson, ___ Doctor Singh
c he's ___ politician, she's ___ teacher, I'm ___ artist
d it's ___ capital city, it's in ___ city centre, it's on ___ right/left
e in ___ Bangkok, in ___ Dubai, in ___ Spain
f in ___ UAE, in ___ USA, in ___ UK
g in ___ morning, in ___ afternoon, at ___ weekend
h on ___ Saturday, from ___ Monday to ___ Friday
i go to ___ work, go ___ home, at ___ school
j by ___ bus, by ___ car, on ___ foot

▶ Read Language summary C on page 153.

Practice

1 a Complete the gaps with *a/an*, *the* or – (no word).

I live in (1) – Dubai. It's (2) ___ fantastic city but we have (3) ___ real problem with traffic. Most people come to work by (4) ___ car so it's very busy in (5) ___ morning when they come into (6) ___ city centre, and in (7) ___ evening when they go (8) ___ home. I'm (9) ___ engineer and I have (10) ___ company car. My journey to (11) ___ work takes about twenty-five minutes. I also use my car at (12) ___ weekend when I play golf.

b T5.8 Listen and check.

2 a Write the answers to these questions using a phrase with *a/an*, *the* or zero (no word).

1 What's your father's job?
2 What's your mother's job?
3 Where do your parents live?
4 How do you come to school?
5 What other ways can you travel to school if you want to?
6 Which day(s) do you usually do your English homework?
7 When do you usually watch TV?
8 Which things do you usually carry in your bag?
9 What is your favourite day of the week? Why?
10 What do you usually do in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

3 Work in small groups or teams. Answer the quiz questions with *a/an*, *the* or – (no word). Then check your answers on page 147.

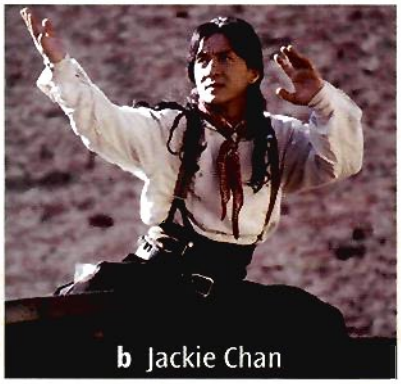
Quiz

1 **What are the capital cities of these countries?**

a Korea **b** Argentina **c** Poland **d** Canada

2 **What are these people's jobs?**

a Vladimir Putin



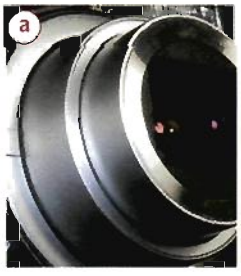
b Jackie Chan

c JK Rowling

3 **On which side of the road do people drive in these countries? (Do not look at page 43!)**

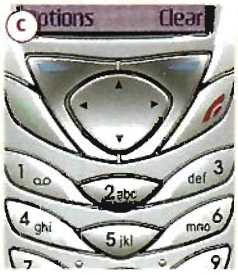
a Australia **b** USA **c** UK

4 **What are these objects?**



a

b



c

d

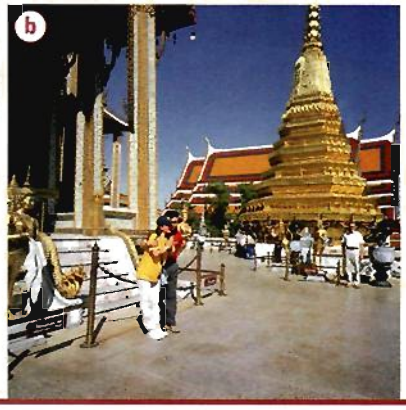
e

5 **Where are these cities?**

a Boston **b** São Paulo **c** Cape Town **d** Seville

6 **In which countries/cities are these buildings?**

a



b

c

Task: Complete a survey about transport

Preparation: reading and writing

1 Work in pairs. Student A: Look at the survey on this page.
Student B: Look at the survey on page 141.
Check any unknown words with your teacher or in your dictionary.

2 a Write the questions in the survey in full.

you / drive a car? *Can you drive a car?*
How far / walk every week? *How far do you walk every week?*

b Practise reading the questions clearly. Ask your teacher if you need help with pronunciation.

Task: speaking

1 Work in the same pairs: Student A and Student B. Ask and answer your questions.

▶ Useful language a

2 Work with a group of three or four students. Student As work together. Student Bs work together. Tell the group what you learnt about your partner.

▶ Useful language b

TRANSPORT SURVEY

1 How far / walk every week?

- 0 to 5 kilometres ◯
- 6 to 10 kilometres ◯
- 11 to 20 kilometres ◯
- more than 20 kilometres ◯

2 How often / travel by car?

- several hours every day ◯
- every day or nearly every day ◯
- several times every week ◯
- not very often ◯

3 What / think of the roads in your town?

- excellent ◯
- good ◯
- okay ◯
- poor ◯
- I don't know ◯

4 ever take / taxis?

- often ◯
- sometimes ◯
- not very often ◯
- never ◯

5 ride a scooter? ◯

6 ride a motorbike? ◯

7 How / usually travel when you go on holiday?

- by plane ◯
- by train ◯
- by bus ◯
- by car ◯

8 Which of these types of transport / like best?

- plane ◯
- boat ◯
- motorbike ◯
- bicycle ◯

Useful language

a Answering questions

Yes, often / sometimes / every day.

No, never.

About (five) kilometres/minutes/hours.

I walk to (the city centre).

I think it's (good).

I like (travelling by car / walking) best.

b Talking about your partner

Giulio likes travelling (by train).

Marina doesn't/can't (ride a bicycle).

Yumiko thinks taxis are (expensive).

Follow up: writing

Write about how you use public transport.

I travel to school by ...
The journey is about ...
I ... use public transport.
I think public transport in my town is ...

Real life

Buying a ticket

1 Florence is in London. She wants to travel to Paris. Put the conversation in a ticket office in the correct order.

- ☐ Here you are.
- ☐ Platform eighteen.
- ☐ Single.
- ☐ Single or return?
- ☐ Thanks. Which platform is it?
- ☑ That's £94.50.
- ☐ A ticket to Paris, please ... the six o'clock train.
- ☐ Thank you. Sign there, please.

2 T5.9 Listen and check. Practise the conversation in pairs.

3 T5.10 Listen to two conversations and answer the questions below for each one.

a Where does the person want to go?
b Does he/she want a single or a return ticket?
c What time is the train?
d Which platform is it?
e What time does it arrive?

4 Work in pairs. Student A: Read the information below. Student B: You are the ticket clerk. Read the information on page 144.

It is 11.30 in the morning and you are in London. You want to buy a return ticket to Glasgow in Scotland. You want to come back on Sunday. You would like to know the cost, the time of the train, the platform number and the arrival time. Write your questions and then speak to the ticket clerk.

5 Change roles. Student B: Read the information below. Student A: You are the ticket clerk. Read the information on page 138.

It is 9.30 in the morning and you are in Brighton, in the south of England. You want to go to London for the day and come back this evening. You would like to know the cost, the time of the train, the platform number and the arrival time. Write your questions and then speak to the ticket clerk.

CONSOLIDATION

A Listening and speaking: Personal information

1 Write one word in each gap.

Elspeth (a) ___is___ a really good friend of mine. She' (b) _____ about twenty-five years old and she (c) _____ in Edinburgh, in (d) _____ big flat near (e) _____ city centre. She (f) _____ at the Scottish Museum and her job (g) _____ very important to her. She isn't (h) _____ but she's (i) _____ a boyfriend, Nick. They (j) _____ got a car because they (k) _____ like driving, but they (l) _____ their bicycles all round the city. Elspeth (m) _____ going to restaurants, (n) _____ to the cinema, and meeting people and she' (o) _____ very friendly.

2 C1 Listen and check.

3 Take two minutes to think about one of your friends. Think about:

- his/her age
- his/her work
- his/her family
- travel
- where he/she lives
- married or not?
- his/her likes and dislikes
- possessions

4 Work with a partner. Speak about your friend for one minute!

B Question words

1 Complete each question in the quiz opposite with one of the question words from the box. Then choose the correct answer.

Who	When	Where	How old	What

2 In groups, make some more questions about people and places in your country. (Use the verb *be*.)

3 Ask your questions to the other groups. Then check your answers at the bottom of the page.

QUIZ

How much do you know about the English-speaking world?

1 _____ is Ontario?
a in Canada
b in the USA
c in Britain

2 _____ colour are the buses in London?
a black
b red
c yellow

3 _____ is the Sydney Opera House?
a about thirty years old
b about forty years old
c about fifty years old

4 _____ is Christmas Day?
a December 25th
b December 31st
c January 6th

5 _____ is the singer George Michael from?
a Britain
b the United States
c Greece

6 _____ is the White House in Washington?
a about 100 years old
b about 200 years old
c about 500 years old

7 _____ is not an actress?
a Liv Tyler
b Kiera Knightley
c Serena Williams

8 _____ is the capital city of New Zealand?
a Christchurch
b Auckland
c Wellington

Answers
1a 2b 3b 4a 5a 6a 7c 8c

MODULES 1–5

C Listening: Information about times and prices

1 a C2 Listen to the three conversations. What are the people talking about? Listen and tick (✔) the topics.

travelling by plane	the zoo	the cinema
travelling by train	television programmes	a jazz concert

b Put the words in order to make questions.

Conversation 1

1 the first train / Belfast / What time / leave / does?
What time does the first train leave Belfast?

2 does / arrive / When / it / in Dublin?
_____

3 it / How / is / much?
_____

Conversation 2

4 open / What time / the zoo / does?
_____

5 it / What time / does / close?
_____

6 How much / it / does / for a ten-year-old child / cost?
_____

7 you / can / there / travel / How?
_____

Conversation 3

8 the football / When / does / start?
_____

9 finish / does / When / it?
_____

10 is / What time / the film?
_____

c Listen again and answer questions 1–10.

D *can* and *can't*

Use *can* and *can't* to make sentences about your school.

a buy drinks and snacks
You can buy drinks, but you can't buy snacks.
b study other languages (not only English)
c park your car
d come to evening classes
e study on computers
f use the library at the weekend

E Vocabulary: Alphabet quiz

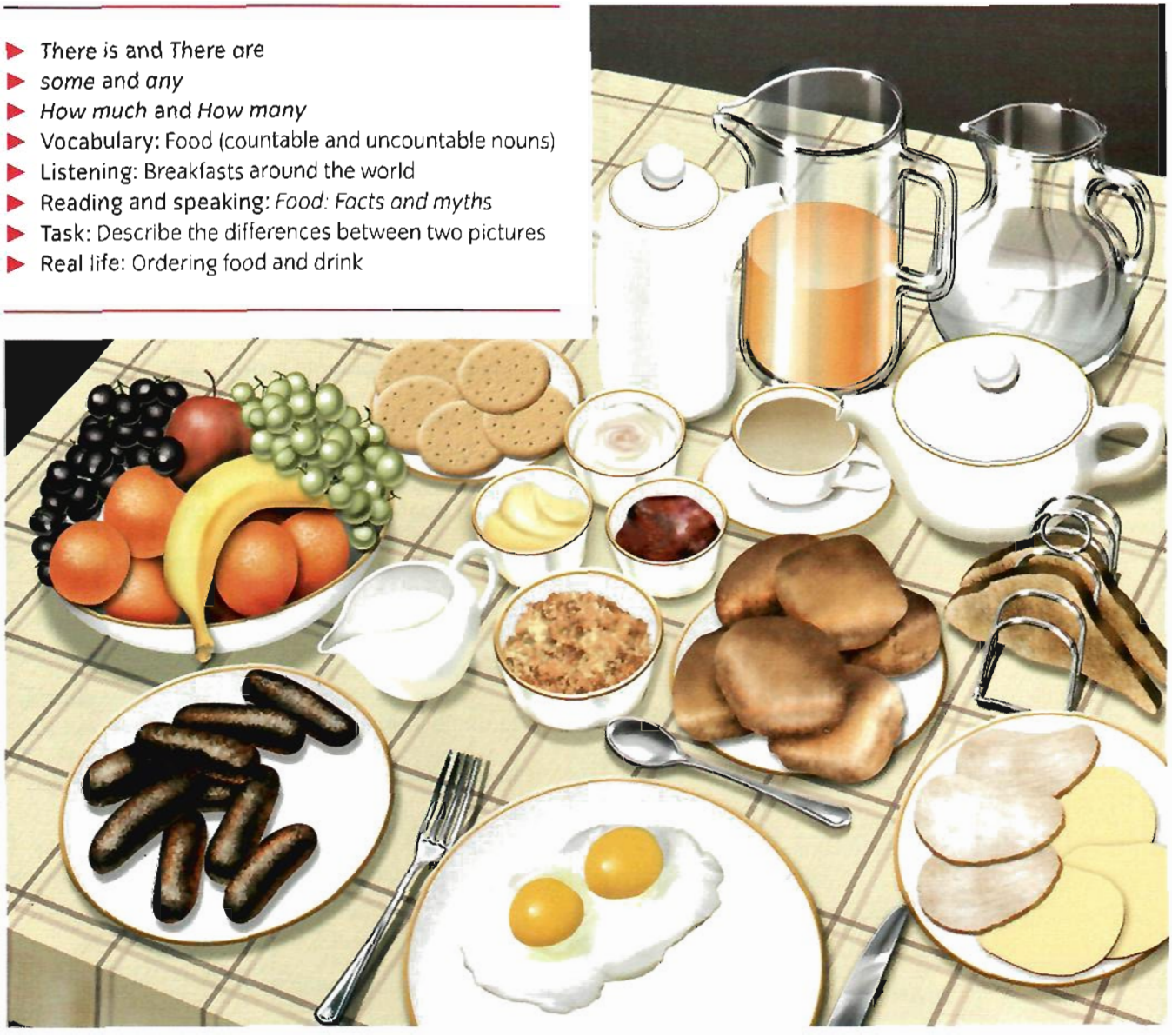
Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with words from Modules 1–5. The first letter of each word is given.

a My father's sister is my a*unt* .
b My mother's son is my b_____ .
c What time does the shop c_____ ?
d Every night I write in my d_____ .
e Her brother's an e_____ , he works for a big building company.
f My f_____ colour is red.
g Their new house has got a beautiful g_____ with a swimming pool.
h When does Alan h_____ lunch?
i Can I see your i_____ card, Madam?
j Sony is a J_____ company.
k I'm sorry, I don't k_____ your name.
l Ludmila studies l_____ at university.
m My sister's a m_____ – she plays the piano.
n Underground trains stop at n_____ .
o Banks o_____ at 9.30 in Britain.
p My son's a p_____ officer.
q In Britain people wait in a q_____ to buy tickets for the cinema.
r A lot of people r_____ bicycles in the Netherlands.
s Jennifer's not married. She's s_____ .
t Many people t_____ to work by train.
u My cousin's father is my u_____ .
v Kieron v_____ his grandfather every week.
w I often w_____ for a bus for one hour!
y Liam is two y_____ old.
z This z_____ hasn't got many animals.

MODULE 6

Eating and drinking

- There is and There are
- *some* and *any*
- *How much* and *How many*
- Vocabulary: Food (countable and uncountable nouns)
- Listening: Breakfasts around the world
- Reading and speaking: *Food: Facts and myths*
- Task: Describe the differences between two pictures
- Real life: Ordering food and drink



Vocabulary

Food (countable and uncountable nouns)

1 Look at the picture from a hotel restaurant. Is it breakfast, lunch or dinner?

2 Find these things in the picture.

milk	eggs	butter	cereal	oranges	jam
an apple	toast	bread rolls	meat	sausages	
grapes	a banana	cheese	yoghurt	orange juice	
coffee	water	tea	fruit	biscuits	

3 a Put the words in exercise 2 into two groups. Practise saying the words.

things you can count (countable nouns)		
• eggs	•	•
•	•	•
•	•	•
things you can't count (uncountable nouns)		
• milk	•	•
•	•	•
•	•	•
•	•	•

b Can uncountable nouns be plural?

▶ Read Language summary A on page 153.

Language focus 1

There is and *There are*

T6.1 Listen to eight sentences about the picture. Are they true (✔) or false (✘)?

Grammar

1 **Choose the correct alternatives.**

Singular: There's / There are a banana.
Plural: There's / There are eight eggs.
Uncountable: There's / There are some butter.

2 **We often make negative sentences using *no*.**

There's no apple juice.
There are no strawberries.

▶ Read Language summary B on page 153.

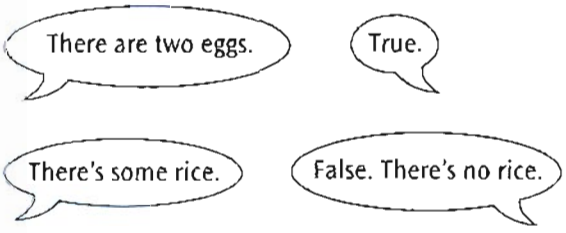
Pronunciation

Look at recording 1 on page 168 and listen again. Notice how the sounds at the end of one word link onto the next word.
There's an apple.
There are a lot of grapes.
Practise saying the sentences.

Practice

1 a Write five true sentences and four false sentences about the picture.

b Work in pairs. Test your partner using your sentences. Your partner closes his/her book.



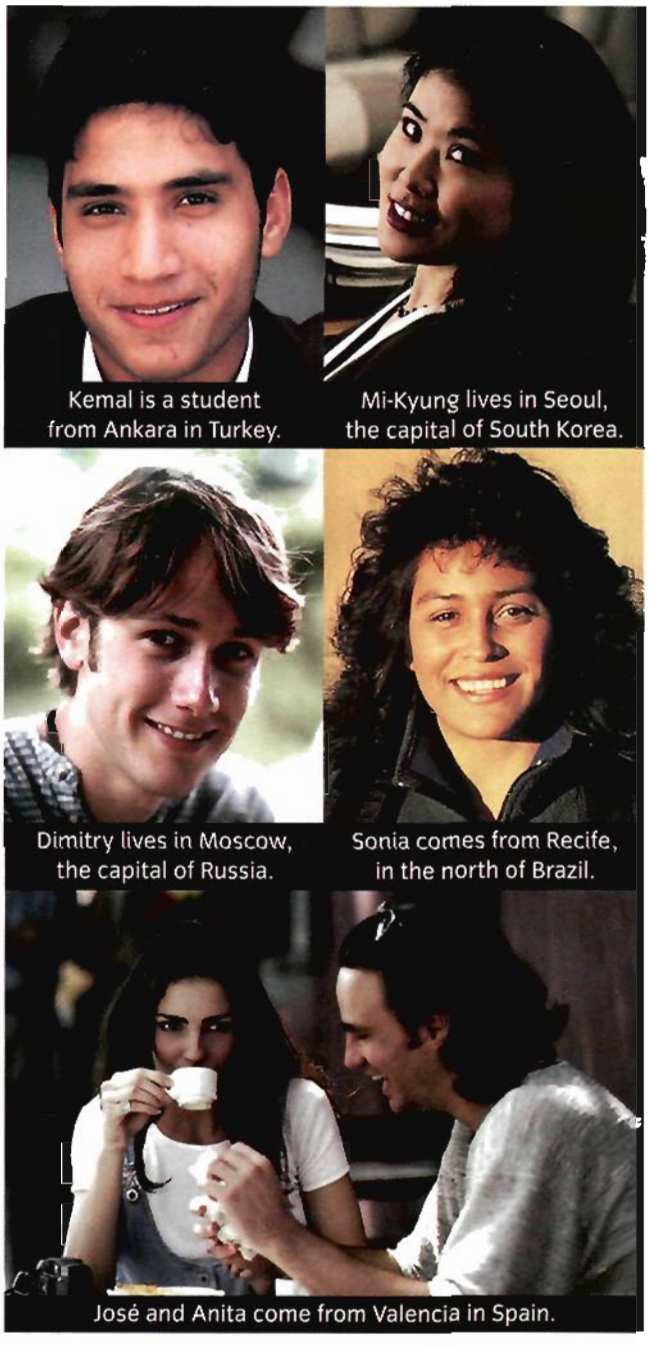
2 Tick (✔) the sentences that are true about your school. Correct the ones that are false.

a There are twenty students in my class.
No, there aren't. There are fifteen students.
b There's a video in our classroom.
c There are pictures on the walls.
d There's some paper in the bin.
e There's half an hour left before the end of the lesson.
f There are some plants in the classroom.
g There's a coffee machine on this floor.

Listening

Breakfasts around the world

1 T6.2 Listen to five people talking about their breakfast. Write down what they have.



2 Discuss these questions.

a What do you usually have for breakfast?
b Are the breakfasts in the recording the same or different from yours?
c Which ones would you like to try?

3 Write about your normal breakfast, lunch and dinner. What snacks do you have?

Reading and speaking

1 a Match these foods to the pictures.

carrots	chocolate	green vegetables
grilled fish	lemons	melon
noodles	nuts	pasta	rice

b MD Which of these foods contain ...
- vitamins?
- protein?
- minerals?
- a lot of calories?

2 *Work in pairs. Make a list of eight* foods that are healthy and eight that are unhealthy.

healthy	unhealthy
green vegetables	chocolate

3 a MD *Read these ideas about* healthy eating. Do you think they are true? Compare ideas with other students.

Coffee and tea are bad for you.

There are 'good' foods and 'bad' foods.

Vegetarian food is always healthy.

Fruit juice is good for you.

Carrots help you see in the dark.

It's okay not to eat breakfast.

I think this is true.

I'm not sure about this.

b MD Read the text quickly and match the ideas to the paragraphs.

4 Read the text again. Were you right in exercise 3a? Which information is surprising?

5 What are your favourite foods? Which foods don't you like?

Food: Facts and myths

1 Fruit juice is good for you.

True and false. Natural fruit juice is good for you, but it can be bad for your teeth. So yes, have some orange juice with your breakfast or lunch, but don't drink any juice between meals. Try water instead. Up to eight glasses of water a day is good for you, and water hasn't got any calories!

2 _____

False. When you sleep you don't eat for a long time and in the morning it's important to start the day with a good breakfast. Without breakfast you often feel hungry later in the morning and start eating biscuits or chocolate. These sugary snacks are not a good idea. (If you want a healthy snack, try some nuts or melon.)

3 _____

True and false. People drink coffee when they are tired, but it isn't very healthy so don't have more than two cups a day and don't drink any coffee before you go to bed. Tea is generally good for you, but drink it with lemon and don't put any milk or sugar in it! Green tea is especially healthy.

4 _____

False. Vegetarian dishes often contain a lot of cheese and oil and these can be very fattening. It's important to eat some vegetables every day. (Doctors say five portions of vegetables and/or fruit). We need the vitamins and minerals, especially from green vegetables.

5 _____

False. Carrots have a lot of vitamin A and vitamin A is good for your eyes, but nobody can really see in the dark!

6 _____

False. There are good and bad diets. For example, real chocolate contains vitamins and minerals and can help you when you are tired. But it also has a lot of sugar, so don't eat it often. Eat a balanced diet with some rice, pasta, bread or noodles and lots of vegetables and fruit. You also need protein, from meat, grilled fish, cheese or nuts. And you need oil: olive oil and fish oil are particularly good.

Language focus 2
some and *any*

Grammar

1 We use *some* and *any* with uncountable and plural nouns. Complete the sentences with *some* and *any*, using the text to help you.

Have _____ *orange juice with your breakfast.*
Don't drink _____ *juice between meals.*
Water hasn't got _____ *calories.*
If you want a snack, try _____ *nuts.*

Circle the correct alternative.

We normally use *some / any* in positive sentences.
We normally use *some / any* in negative sentences.

Find two more examples of *some* and *any* in the text and underline them.

2 Notice that, in questions, we normally use *any*.

Is there ***any*** *milk?*
Have we got ***any*** *eggs?*

▶ Read Language summary C on page 153.

Practice

1 a Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1 It's a good idea to drink _____ fruit juice between meals.
2 Water hasn't got _____ calories.
3 For a healthy snack, you can eat _____ nuts or _____ melon.
4 Don't drink _____ coffee before you go to bed – it's bad for you.
5 It's healthy to put _____ sugar in your tea.
6 Chocolate hasn't got _____ vitamins or minerals in it.
7 It's good to eat _____ pasta, rice or bread every day.
8 Don't eat _____ oil – it's very bad for you.

b Are the sentences true or false, according to the text?

Pronunciation

T6.3 Listen and notice the stress.

• /səm/ •
Eat some fruit.

• • /eni/ •
Don't eat any biscuits.

Listen to the other sentences and practise the stress. (Look at the tapescript on page 168 to help you.)

2 a Katie wants to eat healthily. Look at her shopping list on page 147 for two minutes, then close your book.

b Work in pairs. Can you remember what Katie wants to buy? There are twelve things.

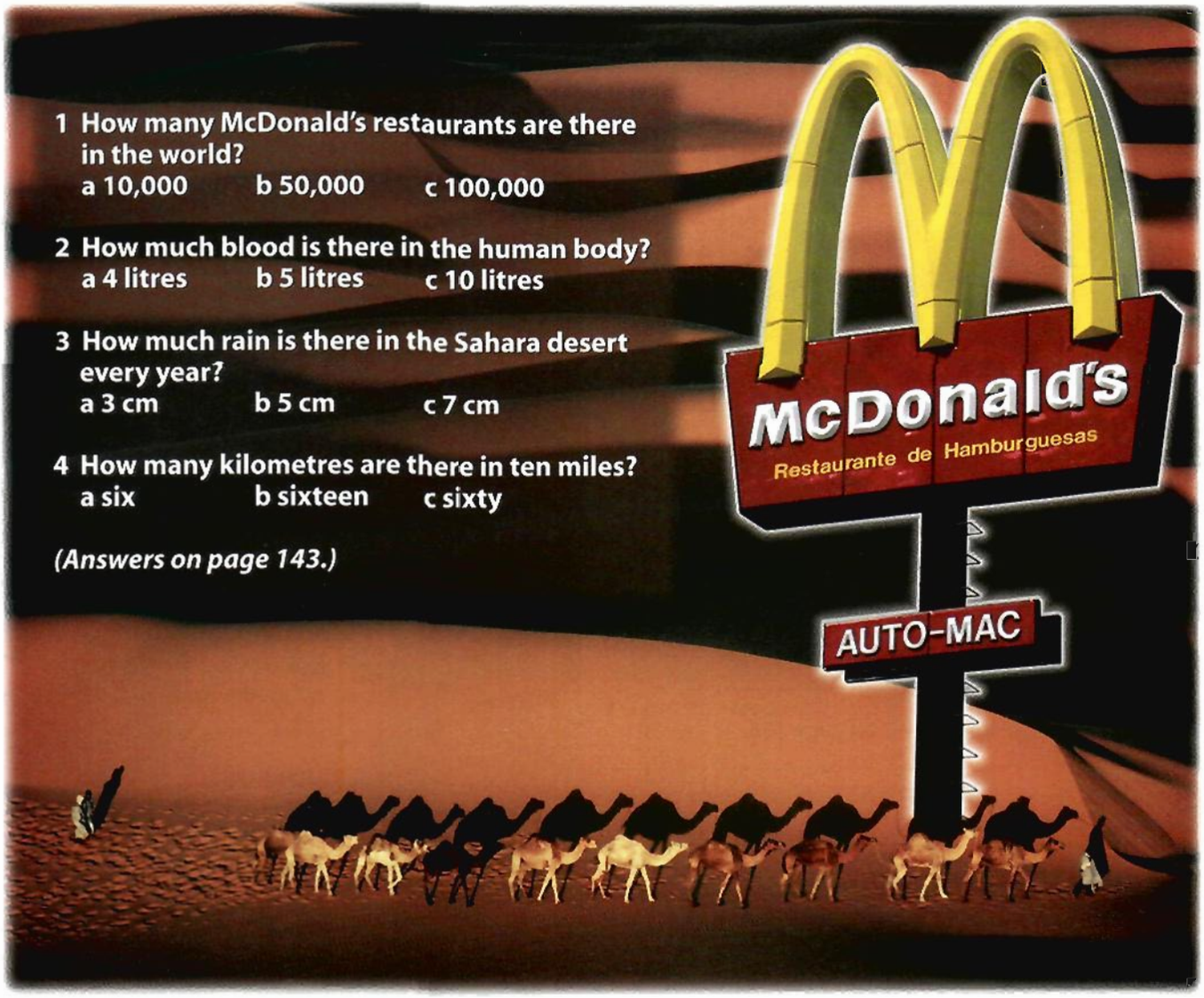
She wants to buy some apples and some …

3 a When Katie goes shopping she forgets about her list! Look at the things she brings home and answer the questions.

a Which things from her list has she got?
b Which things from her list hasn't she got?

She's got some grapes but she hasn't got any oranges.

b Is there any unhealthy food in her shopping bag?



1 How many McDonald's restaurants are there in the world?
a 10,000 b 50,000 c 100,000

2 How much blood is there in the human body?
a 4 litres b 5 litres c 10 litres

3 How much rain is there in the Sahara desert every year?
a 3 cm b 5 cm c 7 cm

4 How many kilometres are there in ten miles?
a six b sixteen c sixty

(Answers on page 143.)

Language focus 3

How much and *How many*

MD Read the questionnaire above and discuss the answers in pairs.

Grammar

Choose the correct alternative.

When we ask questions we use:

- *how many* with countable / uncountable nouns and
- *how much* with countable / uncountable nouns.

▶ Read Language summary D on page 154.

Practice

a Complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

1 _____ water do you drink every day?
2 _____ cups of coffee do you drink every day?
3 _____ sugar do you have with your coffee or tea?
4 _____ oil and butter do you eat with your food?
5 _____ red meat do you eat every week?
6 _____ bread/rice/pasta do you have every day?
7 _____ vegetables do you eat every day?
8 _____ fruit do you eat every day?
9 _____ sweets and biscuits do you eat every week?
10 _____ cigarettes do you smoke every day?
11 _____ alcohol do you drink every week?
12 _____ hours' sleep do you have every night?
13 _____ time do you work on a computer every day?
14 _____ times do you go to the gym or play sport every week?
15 _____ kilometres do you walk every day?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Is your partner's lifestyle healthy or unhealthy?

Task: Describe the differences between two pictures

Preparation: listening

1 Look at the picture. Where are the people? Find these things.

soup	prawns	chicken	plates	cups	knives	forks	spoons
sunglasses	a hat	a dress	feathers	balloons	drums		

2 T6.4 Listen to someone describing the picture. Number the things in the picture she describes.

Task: speaking

1 Work in pairs. Student A: Look at picture A on this page. Student B: Look at picture B on page 148. Do not look at your partner's picture.

2 You have ten minutes to find ten differences between the two pictures. Describe your picture and ask questions.

▶ Useful language a and b

3 How many differences can you find? Compare answers with the class. Did you find all the differences?

▶ Useful language c

Useful language

a Describing your own picture

In my picture ...

there's a (small boy).

there's some (soup).

there aren't any (balloons).

On the left / On the right / In the middle, there's ...

b Asking questions

In your picture, is there a (man) / any (rice)?

Has the man got a (cap)?

How many (spoons) are there?

What colour is the (mother's dress)?

c Talking about differences

In picture A, there's (a balloon / some soup) but in Picture B ...

Real life

Ordering food and drink

1 Where do you most like to eat and drink? What do you usually order when you eat in a restaurant?

Pronunciation

T6.5 Which food and drink words below are similar in your language? Listen to the pronunciation in English. Is it the same or different? Practise saying the words.

sandwich chocolate salad burger yoghurt orange juice pizza mayonnaise biscuits fruit lemonade banana tea spaghetti

2 a Look at the photos. Which restaurant sells pizzas? hamburgers? coffee and cakes?

b **T6.6** Listen to three conversations and answer the questions.

1 Which of the restaurants are they in?
2 What do the people order?
3 How much does it cost?

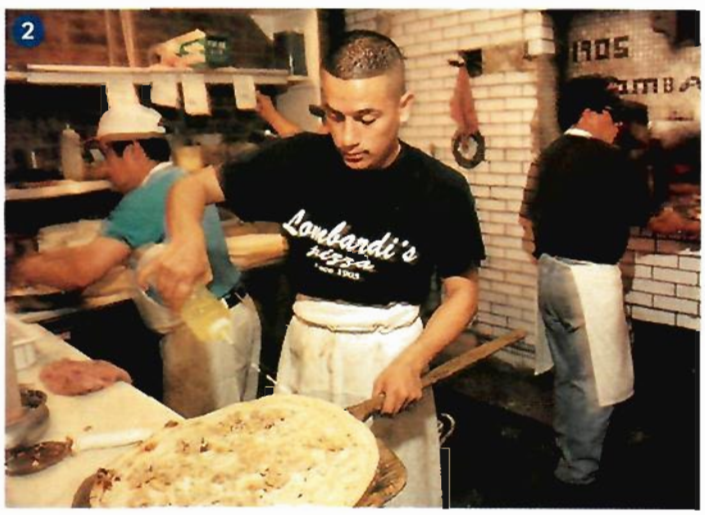
3 **T6.7** Listen and complete the sentences. Then practise saying them.

a Can I take your *order* , please?
b _____ I have two Super King-Size burgers, please?
c _____ to drink with that?
d Eat in or take _____ ?
e Would you like anything _____ ?
f Can we _____ the bill, please?
g _____ the change.
h I'd like to _____ a pizza.
i _____ would you like?
j How _____ is that altogether?

Pronunciation

T6.8 Look at the tapescript on page 168. Listen and notice the polite intonation in these sentences. Practise saying them.

4 Work in pairs. Look at the menu on page 138.



STUDY...

Finding grammar in a dictionary (1)

1 You can use your mini-dictionary to find out if nouns are countable or uncountable.

grape /greɪp/ *noun* (c) a small round juicy fruit that grows in bunches and is used to make wine: *a bunch of black grapes*

ce·re·al /'sɪəriəl/ *noun* (u) 1 a food you eat for breakfast that contains a mixture of wheat, rice, nuts etc, and that you usually mix with milk

2 Find if these words are countable or uncountable.

job money traffic flight platform economics tennis music coin game transport work chewing gum traffic jam

3 For countable nouns you can use your mini-dictionary to find their plural form.

grand·child /'græntʃaɪld/ *noun* [c], *plural* grandchildren /-ˌtʃɪldrən/ the child of your son or daughter: *Rosa is his youngest grandchild*

4 Write the plurals. Check in your mini-dictionary.

CD knife match person woman tourist glass office way meal baby wife

Pronunciation spot

International words

a Which words are the same in your language?

restaurant airport hospital café hotel university snack bar platform terminal college information desk

b T6.9 **Listen to the English pronunciation. Is it the same or different?**

c Listen again and mark the stress on the words. Practise saying them.

• restaurant

PRACTISE...

1 Food and drink ☐

Complete the food and drink words.

a c e r e a l
b b _ t _ _ r
c t _ _ s t
d f r _ _ t
e b _ s c _ _ t s
f o r _ _ _ _ j _ _ c _
g v _ g _ _ _ _ _ _ s
h y _ g _ _ _ t
i n _ _ d l _ _

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, pages 52 and 54.**

2 *There is* and *There are* ☐

Write true sentences about your town using *There is* or *There are*.

a *There are a lot of* restaurants.
b _____ airport.
c _____ station.
d _____ trams.
e _____ university.
f _____ cinemas.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 153.**

3 *some* and *any* ☐

Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

a Are there *any* Mexican students in your class?
b I'd like _____ water, please.
c I haven't got _____ brothers or sisters.
d I've got _____ e-mails from my students.
e I'm sorry but there isn't _____ milk.
f Are there _____ films on TV tonight?

▶ **Need to check? Language summary C, page 153.**

4 *How much* and *How many* ☐

Choose the correct alternatives.

a How (many) / much brothers and sisters have you got?
b How many / much students is / are there in your class?
c How many / much money have you got with you today?
d How many / much languages can you speak?
e How many / much football do you watch on TV every week?
f How many / much homework is / are there tonight?

▶ **Need to check? Language summary D, page 154.**

5 Ordering food and drink ☐

Put the sentences in the correct order.

A: ready / order / you / Are / to ? *Are you ready to order?*
B: soup, / can / Yes / some / have / chicken / please / I ?
A: else / Anything ?
B: sandwich / a / like / Yes / cheese / I'd
A: drink / you / Would / to / like / anything ?
B: please / mineral water, / A

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 58.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 161 to check what you know!

MODULE 7

Extraordinary lives

- Past simple: *was* and *were*, regular and irregular verbs
- Vocabulary: Years, decades and centuries
- Reading: *An ordinary life ... an amazing idea*
- Listening: A true story
- Real life: Dates and other past time phrases
- Task: Tell your life story

Language focus 1

Past simple: *was* and *were*

1 MD Think of a famous person for each of the following. Compare answers with other students.

- scientist
- political leader
- artist
- comedian
- writer
- composer

2 a MD Work in pairs. How many questions can you answer about the famous people in the photos?

b T7.1 Listen and check. What else did you learn?

Grammar

1 Notice the past forms of *be*.

Kennedy was president of the USA for three years.
The Beatles were school friends.
Beethoven wasn't born deaf.
Laurel and Hardy weren't singers.

2 Complete the gaps.

+
I _was_
he/she/it _was_
you/we/they _____

−
I _____
he/she/it _____
you/we/they _____

?
_____ I?
_____ he/she/it?
_____ you/we/they?

▶ Read Language summary A on page 154.

LEGENDS IN

1 John F Kennedy was President of the United States in:
a the 1950s b the 1960s c the 1970s

2 The scientist Marie Curie was born in:
a Paris b Warsaw c Geneva

3 Laurel and Hardy were:
a singers b businessmen c comedians

4 The Beatles were originally from:
a London b Manchester c Liverpool

Practice

1 Write seven sentences about the people in the photos.

Marie Curie wasn't French, she was Polish.

Pronunciation

1 T7.2 Listen and write down the ten sentences.

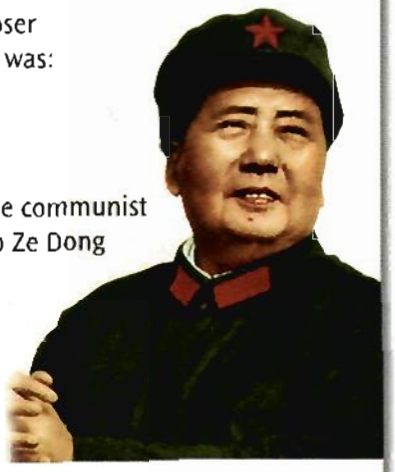
2 Notice the weak forms of *was* and *were* and the pronunciation of *wasn't* and *weren't*.

/wəz/ /wə/
He was born in New York. Where were you born?
/wɒznt/ /wɜ:nt/
He wasn't French. They weren't from London.

3 Listen again and practise the sentences.

5 The composer Beethoven was:
a blind
b deaf
c both

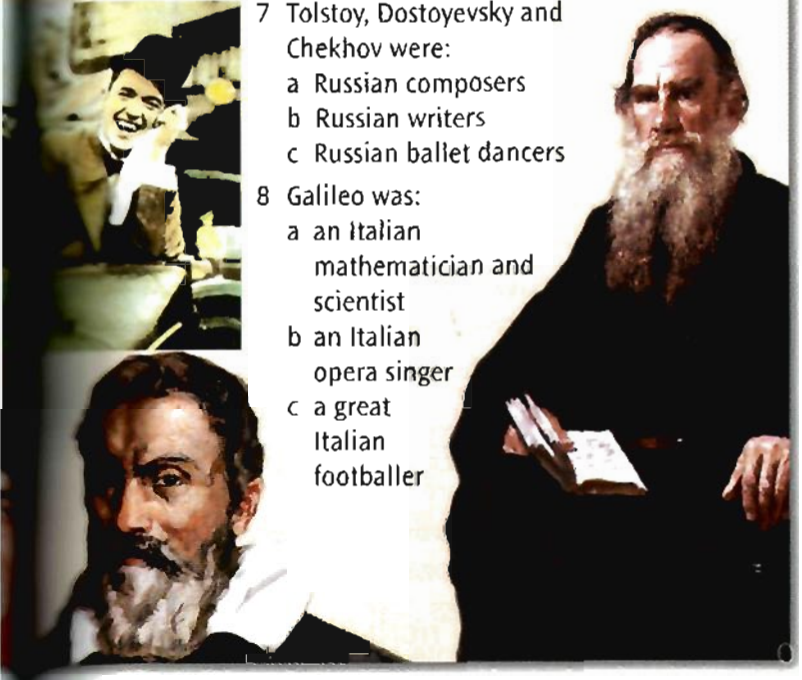
6 The Chinese communist leader Mao Ze Dong was born:
a in 1793
b in 1893
c in 1993



THEIR TIME

7 Tolstoy, Dostoyevsky and Chekhov were:
a Russian composers
b Russian writers
c Russian ballet dancers

8 Galileo was:
a an Italian mathematician and scientist
b an Italian opera singer
c a great Italian footballer



2 a Complete the questions with was or were.

1 Where ____ your parents born?
2 How old ____ your parents when you ____ born?
3 Where ____ you born – at home or in hospital?
4 What time of day ____ you born?
5 What day of the week ____ you born on?
6 What ____ your favourite food when you ____ little?
7 Who ____ your best friend when you ____ young?
8 What ____ the name of your first teacher at school?
9 ____ you frightened of anything when you ____ a small child?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

Vocabulary

Years, decades and centuries

1 T7.3 Listen and circle the year you hear.

a (2006) / 2001	d 1989 / 1999	g 1804 / 1904
b 1984 / 1985	e 1978 / 1878	h 1917 / 1970
c 1919 / 1990	f 1914 / 1940	i 2020 / 2030

Pronunciation

1 Listen again. Notice the stress.

two thousand and six

nineteen eighty-five

nineteen ninety

2 Listen again and practise saying the dates.

2 T7.4 Check the words in bold in a bilingual dictionary. Work in pairs. How many sentences below can you complete? Listen and check.

a The Beatles were first **popular** ... *in the 1960s.*
b Napoleon I was **Emperor** of France ...
c Bill Clinton was President of the USA ...
d William Shakespeare was born ...
e The Russian **Revolution** was ...
f The first **landing** on the **moon** was ...
g The Second World **War** was ...
h Mozart was born ...
i Madonna's first **hit single** was ...
j Leonardo da Vinci was born ...

from 1804 to 1815	in 1917
from 1939 to 1945	in 1969
in the eighteenth century	~~in the 1960s~~
in the fifteenth century	in the 90s
in the sixteenth century	in the 80s

3 Use another phrase to say these.

a 1970–1979 *the nineteen-seventies*
b 1930–1939
c 1960–1969
d 1920–1929
e 1600–1699

4 Work in pairs. Write five sentences like the ones in exercise 2 about famous people in your country.

▶ Read Language summary C on page 155.

Reading

1 Tim Berners-Lee invented something very important. Do you know what it was?

2 MD Check the meaning of the words and phrases in the box.

ordinary	surprising	to become
to be interested in		to graduate
a network	to decide	to be linked

3 Read the text. Then complete the fact file at the bottom of the text.

An ordinary life ... an amazing idea

Tim Berners-Lee looks very ordinary. He's about fifty years old and has brown hair. He was born in England but now lives in Massachusetts in the USA. But in 1989 Tim had a very important idea. He invented the world wide web (www).

Tim went to school in London. Both his parents worked with computers so it isn't surprising that he loved computers from an early age. When he was eighteen, he left school and went to Oxford University where he studied physics. At Oxford, he became more and more interested in computers, and he made his first computer from an old television. He graduated in 1976 and got a job with a computer company in Dorset, England. In 1989, he went to work in Switzerland where he first had the idea of an international information network linked by computer. He decided to call it the world wide web, and he also decided to make his ideas free to everyone – that is why today we do not pay to use the Internet.

In 1994 he went to live in the United States where he now works. In 1995 he wrote an article in the New York Times where he said, 'The web is a universe of information and it is for everyone.' Today his idea of a web, where people from all over the world can exchange information, is real.

Tim Berners-Lee: Fact file

His important idea	
Place of birth	
Place(s) of study	
Place(s) of work	
Personal details	
Now lives in	

Language focus 2

Past simple: regular and irregular verbs

1 Look back at the text about Tim Berners-Lee. Find two sentences about his life now and four sentences about his life in the past.

2 Underline the verbs in the sentences about his life in the past. Are they regular or irregular?

Grammar

1 Regular verbs

a Find the past form of these verbs in the text.

invent	study
work	graduate
love	decide

b How do we form the Past simple of regular verbs?

2 Irregular verbs

Find the past form of these verbs in the text.

have	make
go	get
leave	write
become	

▶ Read Language summary B on page 154.

Practice

1 Use the prompts to make sentences about Tim Berners-Lee.

a born / England *He was born in England.*
b go to school / London
c when / 18 / go to Oxford University
d at university / become / interested in computers
e make / his first computer from a television
f graduate / 1976
g get a job / computer company / England
h go / Switzerland / 1989

2 Work in pairs. Close your books and tell your partner six things you remember about Tim's life.

3 a MD Use your mini-dictionary to find the Past simple forms of these verbs. Which are regular/irregular?

arrive begin believe can take share need die describe steal want win

b T7.5 Do you know who invented the telephone? the radio? Listen and read to find if you were correct.

c Complete the text with the Past simple forms. Listen again and check.

Pronunciation

1 T7.6 Look at the tapescript on page 169. Listen and count the number of syllables you hear.
worked 1 studied 2

2 Notice that only verbs that end in the sounds /t/ or /d/ have an 'extra' syllable in the Past simple.
want-ed wait-ed
need-ed decid-ed

3 T7.7 Listen to eight pairs of sentences. Write *1* if you hear the Past simple first, and *2* if you hear the Past simple second.

4 Look at the tapescript on page 169. Listen again and practise the Past simple sentences.

Who really invented the telephone and the radio?

Many schoolchildren learn that the Scotsman Alexander Graham Bell (1) _____ (invent) the telephone in 1876. But the real inventor (2) _____ (be) Antonio Meucci, a poor Italian American. He (3) _____ (share) a workshop with Bell in the 1860s, and (4) _____ (make) a 'talking telegraph' for his wife who was ill in bed, so that she (5) _____ (can) call him when she (6) _____ (want) something. But Meucci never (7) _____ (take) his idea to the US Patent Office, because he was too poor to pay the $250 that he (8) _____ (need). So on February 14th 1876 Alexander Graham Bell (9) _____ (take) the invention to the Patent Office instead. Just two hours later another inventor, Elisha Gray (10) _____ (arrive) with the same idea – too late!

Alexander Graham Bell Guglielmo Marconi

At the time, nobody (11) _____ (believe) that the telephone was an important invention. Bell's father-in-law, also a scientist, (12) _____ (describe) the invention as 'a beautiful toy'. And it was 2002 before the US Congress (13) _____ (decide) that Meucci was the true inventor of the telephone!

But everyone knows that the Italian Marconi (14) _____ (invent) the radio, right? Wrong. Actually, Guglielmo Marconi (15) _____ (steal) his great idea from Nikola Tesla, a Croatian scientist. Tesla (16) _____ (write) an article in 1893 and in it he (17) _____ (describe) his important new invention – the radio.

But just two years later, Marconi (18) _____ (take) the idea to the US Patent Office and soon (19) _____ (begin) to sell it. In 1909 he even (20) _____ (win) a Nobel Prize for his invention.

In 1943 Nikola Tesla (21) _____ (die) in New York, a poor man. That year, the US Congress (22) _____ (decide) that Nikola Tesla was 'the true father of the radio'.

Listening

A true story

1 You are going to hear the true story of how David Platonoff's Russian grandmother came to live in London. Look at the photos and discuss these questions.

a Which country do you think they show and which period?
b What kind of life do you think David's grandmother had in Russia?

2 a MD T7.8 Read the statements below and check the words in bold. Then listen and mark the statements true or false.

b Listen again and read the tapescript on page 169. What is your reaction to the story?

3 What do you know about the lives of your grandparents? Do you know any other older people who had an interesting life? What happened to them?

Part 1

1 David's grandparents **met** in Moscow.
2 His grandmother's family were **rich**.
3 His grandmother was a **servant** girl.
4 The family came to London **during the First World War**.
5 When they arrived in London, they decided they had **too many** servants.

Part 2

1 The family **took** David's grandmother **for a walk** in the centre of London.
2 They told her to wait for them and then **went away**.
3 They never **came back** for her.
4 His grandmother was twenty years old.
5 She **spoke** good English.

Part 3

1 Some English people **found** her.
2 They took her to the Russian **community** in east London.
3 There she met David's grandfather.
4 He was eighteen years old.
5 They **got married** and had three children.

Real life

Dates and other past time phrases

1 a Practise saying the months on the calendars below.

b Match the dates with the ordinal numbers in the box.

the third	the twenty-first
the second	the first
the twelfth	the fifth
the thirty-first	the tenth
the twenty-second	the seventh
the fifteenth	the twentieth

▶ Read Language summary E on page 155.

Pronunciation

1 Notice the two ways of saying dates in English.

/ð/ • /θ/ •
the seventh of May

• /ð/ • /θ/
May the seventh

2 T7.9 Listen and say the dates in exercise 1a. Pay attention to the pronunciation of 'th'.

3 T7.10 What are these dates? Listen and check, then repeat.

a 1/2/1943	d 13/9/2002
b 3/9/1993	e 23/7/1933
c 31/12/1963	f 30/12/2004

2 Work in pairs. Ask your partner about the birthdays in his/her family.

What date is your birthday?

When's your brother's birthday?

3 Put these time phrases in order from now going back into the past. Compare answers with a partner.

when I was twelve	yesterday morning
twenty years ago	~~ten minutes ago~~
last Tuesday	last night
ten years ago	when I was eight
when I was born	two weeks ago
last weekend	your last birthday
~~last month~~	last year
last August	

now

ten minutes ago

last month

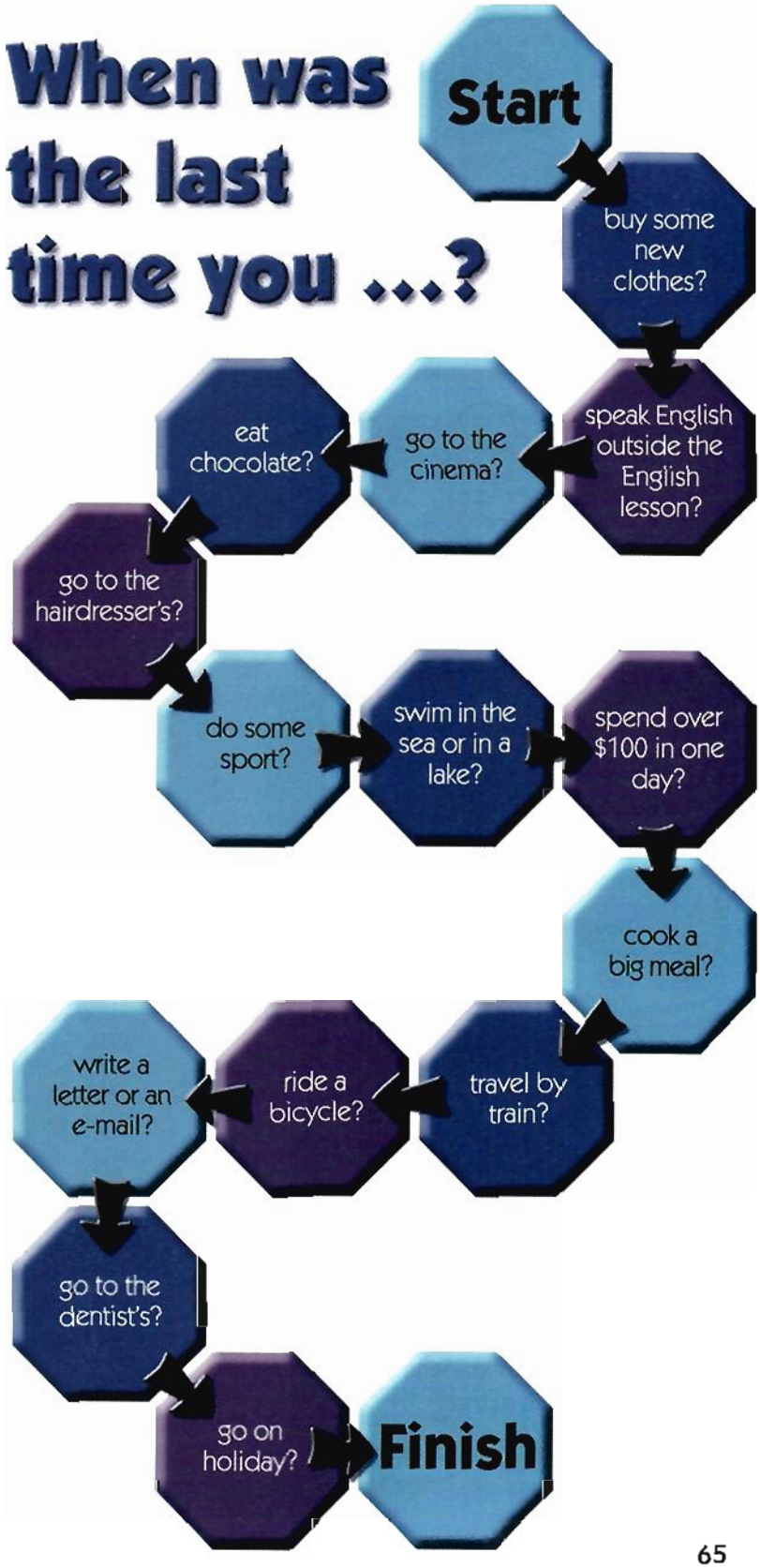
past

▶ Read Language summary D on page 155.

4 Work in small groups. Play the board game using a die. Take turns. When you land on a question, choose which member of the group to ask.

Tania, when was the last time you bought some new clothes?

About a month ago – I bought some jeans.



Task: Tell your life story

Preparation: listening

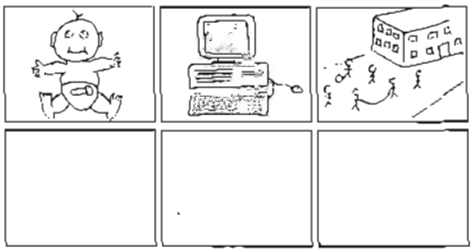
1 Marlene is a singer, from Swansea in Wales. Look at the pictures showing her life story. What can you see?

2 T7.11 Listen to Marlene talking about her life. Which picture relates to each extract?

Extract A = picture ☐ Extract C = picture ☐ Extract E = picture ☐
Extract B = picture ☐ Extract D = picture ☐ Extract F = picture ☐

Task: speaking

1 *Either* Draw six simple pictures for different times in your life and think about what to say about each picture.



Or Make notes about six important events in your life story.

▶ Useful language

Ask your teacher about any important words or phrases you need.

2 Work in pairs. Tell each other about your life story using your pictures/notes to help you.

3 Choose three things to tell the class about your partner's life story.

Useful language

I was born in (1987).
I went to school in (Warsaw).
As a child I loved (playing tennis).
When I was (thirteen), I became interested in (photography).
I left school when I was (seventeen).
I studied (maths) at university.
I graduated in (2002).
I got a job with (a large company).
I went to work in (Tokyo).
I got married in (1999).
In (1995) I started work (as a receptionist).

Follow up: writing

Write your biography, but do not write your name on it. Put your biographies on the wall or a desk. Read other students' biographies and guess whose they are.

STUDY...

Finding grammar in a dictionary (2)

1 MD **You can use your mini-dictionary to find the past forms of verbs.**

buy /baɪ/ *verb* buys, buying **bought** have bought if you buy something, you give someone money and they give you the thing in return

2 MD **Find the past form of these verbs.**

see open live read stop study play know

3 Match A and B to make rules for the spellings of regular past forms.

A

a Most verbs (e.g. *open*) ☐
b Verbs that end in *-e* (e.g. *live*) ☐
c Verbs that end in a consonant + vowel + consonant (e.g. *stop*) ☐
d Verbs that end with a vowel + 'y' (e.g. *play*) ☐
e Verbs that end with a consonant + 'y' (e.g. *study*) ☐

B

1 take 'd'.
2 take 'ed'.
3 change the 'y' to 'ied'.
4 double the final consonant and add 'ed'.

4 Write past forms. Then check in your mini-dictionary.

watch try hate cook travel close finish stay

Pronunciation spot

The sounds /ɔ:/ and /ɜ:/

a T7.12 **Listen and notice the sounds /ɔ:/ and /ɜ:/.**

/ɔ:/ walk, born, August
/ɜ:/ first, birthday, work

b Which sounds are these?

daughter girl morning learn third law quarter Turkey

c T7.13 **Listen and check. Then practise the words.**

PRACTISE...

1 *was* and *were* ☐

a Do you remember the famous people in the photos on page 60? Complete the questions with *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

1 There *were* four English men. Who _____ they?
2 There _____ one woman. She _____ a writer. What _____ her job?
3 How many politicians _____ there?
4 _____ there anyone from Russia?
5 There _____ any Italian composers but there _____ one from Germany. Who _____ he?

b Now write the answers.

▶ **Need to check? Language focus 1, pages 60 and 61.**

2 Dates ☐

Write the dates, years, decades or centuries.

a The Athens Olympic Games were in *two thousand and four*. (2004)
b Mahatma Gandhi lived from _____. (1869–1948)
c The film director Steven Spielberg was born _____. (1946)
d Christmas Day is on _____ _____. (25/12)
e The American comedy *Friends* was popular in _____. (1990–2000)
f The economist Karl Marx lived in _____. (1800–1900)

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, page 61 and Real life, page 64.**

3 Past simple ☐

Write the past form of the verbs.

a arrive *arrived*
b go _____
c make _____
d begin _____
e have _____
f want _____
g become _____
h leave _____
i get _____
j decide _____
k take _____
l die _____

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 154.**

4 Past time phrases ☐

Put a word from the box in the correct place in the sentences.

were	ago	last	~~when~~	yesterday	in	on

when
a I went to São Paolo ^I was twenty.
b The concert started half an hour.
c I telephoned Jim morning.
d We were in class together year.
e She came to Spain 2003.
f We took the photograph when we on holiday.
g My birthday is May 16th.

▶ **Need to check? Language summaries C and D, page 155.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 161 to check what you know!

MODULE 8

Fact or fiction?

- Past simple negative forms and questions
- Vocabulary: Describing films
- Reading: *Film facts!*
- *Listening: The author behind the legend*
- Task: Interview other students about arts and entertainment
- Real life: Arranging a night out

Vocabulary
Describing films

1 Look at the photos from films. Which film is ...

- a cartoon?
- a love story?
- a comedy?
- a horror film?
- a musical?
- a science fiction film?
- an action film?
- a historical film?

2 a MD Which adjective(s) describes each type of film? Compare answers with other students.

sad frightening exciting violent interesting romantic funny enjoyable boring silly

Pronunciation

T8.1 Listen to the adjectives and put them in the correct column according to the stress. Practise saying the adjectives.

●	●•	●••
sad		
•●•	•●••	

b Work in pairs. Say the name of a film (or TV programme) and your partner says which adjective(s) describes it.

Shrek.

Funny and romantic.

Film facts!

Important firsts

1895 The Lumière brothers showed the first film in a Paris caf

1927 The first talking film *The Jazz Singer* appeared. It was als the first musical film. Other popular musicals include *Singing in the Rain*, *West Side Story* and *Grease*.

1937 Walt Disney made the first full-length cartoon *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*.

1977 The first *Star Wars* film appeared.

1996 *Toy Story* was the first film made by computer.

Reading

1 a MD Check the meaning of the words in bold below.

1 Walt Disney made his first long film in 19____ .
2 Titanic **cost** $____ million to make.
3 Charlie Chaplin was born in ____ .
4 In ____ they make about 850 films **every** year.
5 *Titanic* **won** ____ Oscars.
6 Cameron Diaz **earned** $____ for her last film.
7 *Toy Story* appeared in 19____ .
8 The **average** Lebanese person goes to the cinema ____ **times** every year.
9 There are ____ films of the story of Robin Hood.
10 The Lumière brothers **showed** the first film in ____ in a ____ in Paris.

b Reading race. Work in small groups. Read the text and complete the sentences. Who is first to find the answers?

2 Which films in the text have you seen? Were they good?

The biggest film

The 1997 film *Titanic*, starring Kate Winslet and Leonardo DiCaprio, was the most expensive film ever. It cost $200 million to make. But it was also the most successful. It made $1,750 million and won eleven Oscars!

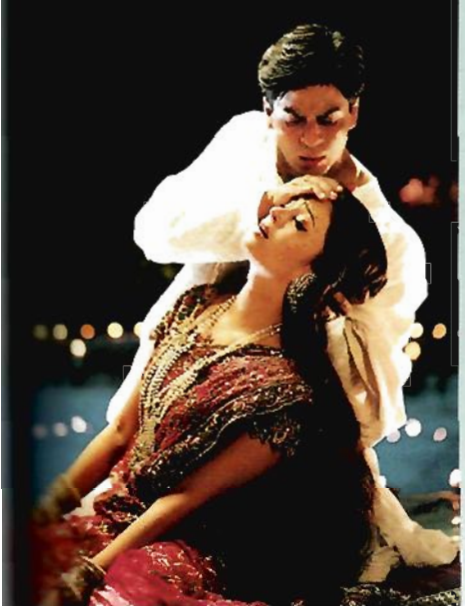
The top-paid actors

Arnold Schwarzenegger is probably the best-paid actor in the world – he earned $30 million for his last movie. Cameron Diaz and Julia Roberts are the best-paid actresses – both earned $20 million for their last films.

Favourite stories

Some of the most popular stories for films are:

Alice in Wonderland (19 films made)
Dracula (15 films made)
Frankenstein (14 films made)
Robin Hood (20 films made)
Romeo and Juliet (32 films)



The great star of the silent movies

Charlie Chaplin was the most famous star of the silent movies. He was born in 1889 and acted in 94 films before he died in 1977.

Not Hollywood!

They make many more films in Bollywood (Mumbai, in India) than in Hollywood. Every year the Indians make about 850 new films – the Americans only make about 560. The Lebanese go to the cinema the most. The average person in the Lebanon goes thirty-five times every year. The average American goes just four times every year!

Language focus 1

Past simple negative forms

1 MD Use your mini-dictionary to find the Past simple of these verbs. Which are irregular?

sleep	create	follow	give
find	drink	fall in love	

2 T8.2 There are mistakes in the descriptions of the films in the photos. Can you find them? Then listen and check.

a Dracula was a vampire who lived in a castle in Poland. He always slept during the day, but at night he became a vampire and drank vodka. (2 mistakes)

b Alice followed a white cat down a hole and had lots of adventures. (1 mistake)

c Robin Hood lived in a forest in China. He took money from rich people and gave it to his girlfriend, Maid Marion. (2 mistakes)

d Dr Frankenstein created a monster. The monster was very handsome and people loved it. (2 mistakes)

e Romeo and Juliet were forty years old. Their families hated each other, but Romeo and Juliet fell in love and got married. Their families were very pleased and Romeo and Juliet lived happily together. (3 mistakes)

3 Complete the gaps.

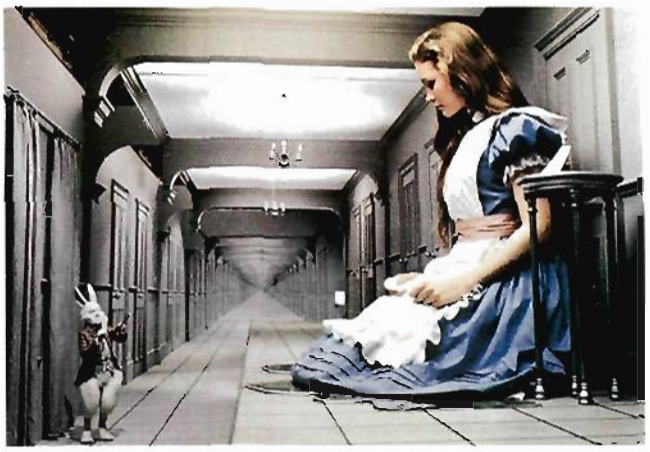
Dracula *didn't live* in Poland, he _____ in Transylvania. He _____ vodka, he _____ blood.

Grammar

We make the Past simple negative with *didn't* (= did not) + verb.

He didn't live in Poland. (NOT: ~~He didn't lived.~~)
He didn't drink vodka.

▶ Read Language summary A on page 155.



Practice

1 Write sentences correcting the mistakes about the other films. Use the words and phrases in the box to help you.

rabbit	poor	ugly	to be frightened of	angry	kill themselves

2 a The picture shows a scene from Romeo and Juliet 500 years ago, but there are twelve mistakes. Can you find them?

b Make sentences using the verbs in the box.

wear	ride	use	listen to	have	eat	read	drink

People didn't have rollerblades 500 years ago.

c T8.3 Listen and check your answers.

Pronunciation

T8.4 Listen and notice the stress in negative sentences.

They didn't have rollerblades.

Listen again and practise the negative sentences.

3 a Put these verbs in the correct form to make sentences true for you.

1 I (go) to the cinema last weekend.
2 I (watch) TV last night.
3 I (rent) a video last weekend.
4 I (see) the news yesterday.
5 I (listen to) the radio this morning.
6 I (read) in bed last night.
7 I (play) computer games yesterday.
8 I (buy) a new CD last week.
9 I (buy) a newspaper this morning.
10 I (listen) to music on my way to school.

b Compare your sentences with other students.

I went to the cinema last weekend.

Me too. I didn't watch TV last night.

- The three Lord of the Rings films appeared in 2001, 2002 and 2003. They are based on the novels of the British writer JRR Tolkien.
- The director Peter Jackson filmed them in New Zealand. They cost more than $300 million to make, and, in all, more than 20,000 actors appeared in the three films!
- After Titanic, they are the three most successful films ever, taking over $3 billion in total!
- The final film The Return of the King won 11 Oscars. In some countries, fans queued for three weeks to buy tickets.
- In New Zealand they had an enormous party for the first night of The Return of the King. They even changed the name of Wellington, their capital city to 'Middle Earth' for the evening!

Listening

The author behind the legend

1 Discuss these questions with other students.

a Did you see any of the *Lord of the Rings* films? If so, did you enjoy them?
b Do you like 'fantasy' stories?

2 MD Read the text above about the *Lord of the Rings* films.

3 a MD You are going to hear a radio programme about JRR Tolkien, the author of the *Lord of the Rings* books. Read the statements on the right about his life and check the meaning of the words in bold.

b T8.5 Listen and mark the statements true (✔) or false (✘).

c Listen again and correct the false information.

He didn't have a happy childhood.

1 Tolkien had a happy **childhood**.
2 His parents died when he was young.
3 He was very interested in **ancient** languages.
4 He was a **professor** at Cambridge University.
5 He invented his own languages.
6 He wrote his first stories to create a fantasy world for his languages.
7 His children didn't like his stories.
8 The *Lord of the Rings* books first appeared in 1974.
9 Only children liked his stories.
10 He saw the films of his books before he died.
11 His family **made a lot of money** from the films.
12 His **great-grandson** acted in one of the films.

Language focus 2

Past simple questions

Put the interviewer's questions in the correct order. Then look at the tapescript on page 170 and check.

1 have / did / a happy childhood / he?
Did he have a happy childhood?
2 start writing / did / at a young age / he?
3 a famous writer / how / become / he / did?
4 Tolkien / die / did / when?
5 he / did / the films of his books / see?
6 make / did / a lot of money / his family?

Grammar

1 We form Past simple questions with *did* + verb.

Did Tolkien have a happy childhood?
Did he see the films of his books?
When did he die? (NOT ~~When did he died~~?)

2 Notice the short answers.

Did his family make a lot of money?
Yes, they did.
No, they didn't.

▶ Read Language summary B on page 155.

Practice

1 a MD Put a tick (✔) next to the things you did when you were ten years old and a cross (✘) next to the things you didn't do.

1 like sport
2 go abroad for your holidays
3 wear fashionable clothes
4 play out in the street
5 ride a bicycle
6 play a musical instrument
7 work hard at school
8 drink tea and coffee
9 read a lot
10 watch a lot of TV
11 like rock music
12 have a mobile phone

b Work in pairs. Ask your partner about these things.

c Tell the class about your partner.

2 Anna is asking Helena about her weekend. Write the questions in A. Then match them with the answers in B.

A

a Where / go? *Where did you go?*
b Who / go with?
c How / get there?
d Why / go there?
e What / think of it?
f What / do there?
g When / come back?

B

1 We went to the old town, and to a club in the evening.
2 By plane.
3 Because someone told us about it.
4 We went to Prague.
5 Early this morning!
6 It was fantastic.
7 With my friend.

3 Work in pairs. Ask your partner about an interesting place he/she visited recently.

4 Write sentences about your partner.

Alain went to Madrid last month for a holiday.
He went with his family.
He went there by car.
They went because they like cities.
They visited the old town and went to a concert.
They came back three weeks ago.
They loved Madrid!

Task: Interview other students about arts and entertainment

Preparation: listening

1 T8.6 Listen to six people talking about their favourite films, books, music, etc. Match their answers to the questions below.

a Who's your favourite actress?
b When did you last go to a concert?
c Did you enjoy the film?
d What kind of music do you like?
e Do you like ballet?
f What was the last book you read? 1

2 Work in pairs or small groups. Use the prompts in the circles to write a questionnaire about arts and entertainment.

▶ Useful language a

Task: speaking

1 Choose seven questions from your questionnaire. Interview two students from another group. Make a note of their answers.

▶ Useful language b

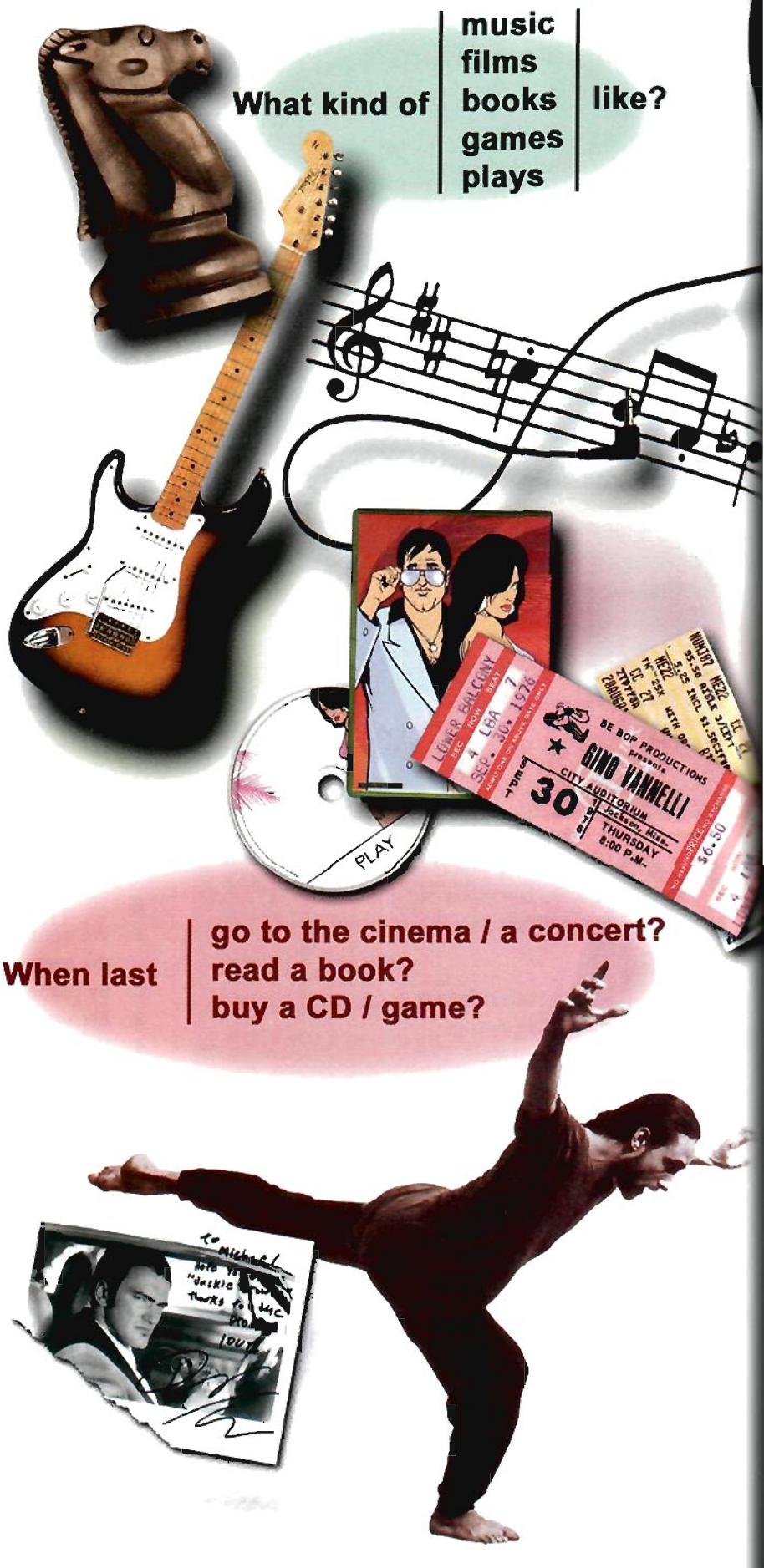
2 Tell the class three things you learnt about one student.

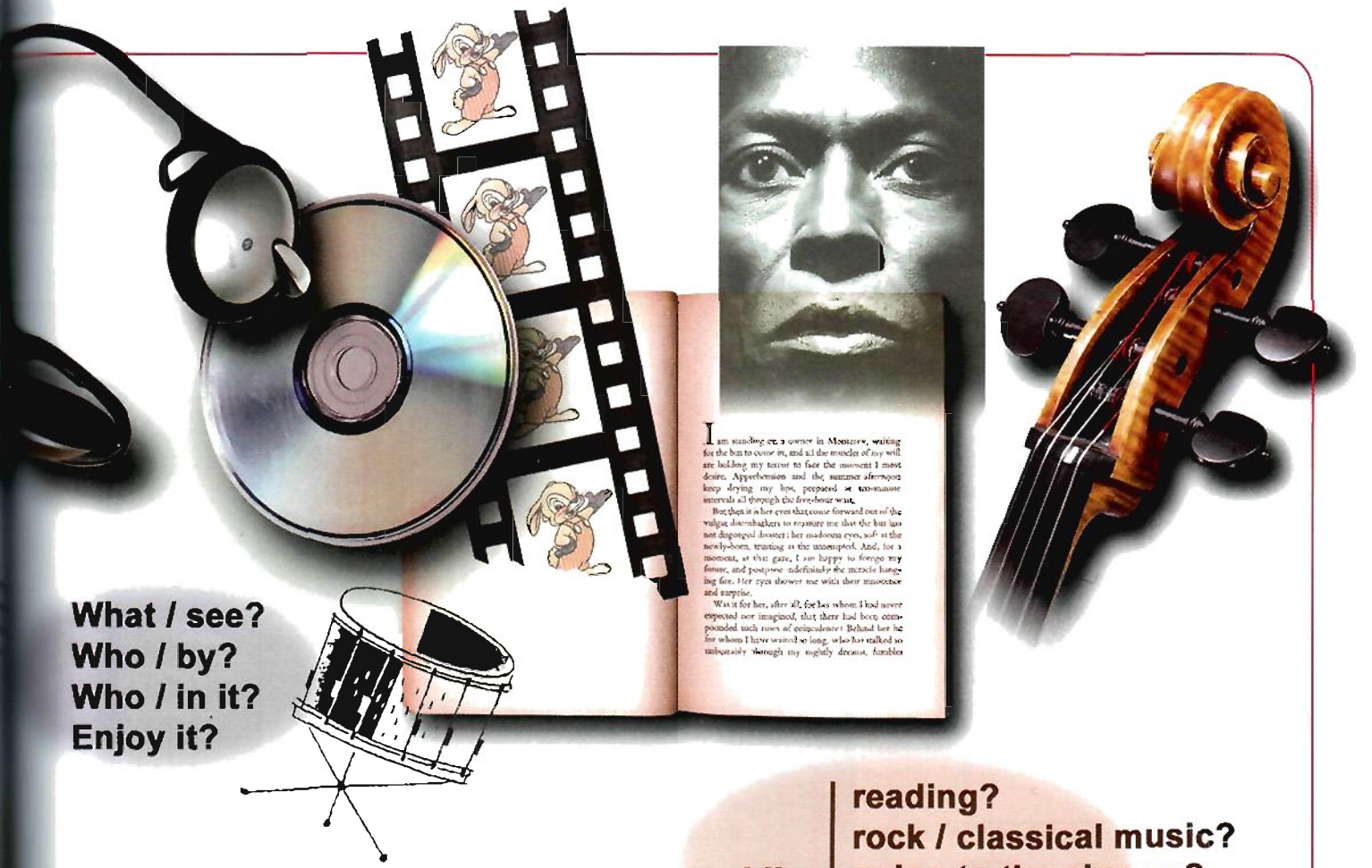
Follow up: writing

Write about your answers to the questions.

My favourite book is ... . It's by ...
The last book I read was ... by ...
I thought it was ...

I like ... and ... music.
My favourite singer is ...
My favourite group is ...
The last concert I went to was ...
I didn't really enjoy it.





I am standing on a corner in Montrouge, waiting for the bus to come in, and all the muscles of my will are holding my terror to face the moment I most desire. Apprehension and the summer afternoon keep drying my lips, prepared at ten-minute intervals all through the five-hour wait.

But then it is her eyes that come forward out of the vulgar disembarkers to reassure me that the bus was not disgorged disorder: her madonna eyes, soft as the newly-born, trusting as the unexempted. And, for a moment, at that gate, I am happy to forego my future, and postpone indefinitely the miracle hanging for. Her eyes shower me with their innocence and surprise.

Was it for her, after all, for her whom I had never expected nor imagined, that there had been compounded such rues of coincidence? Behind her he for whom I have waited so long, who has stalked so unbearably through my nightly dreams, fumbles

What / see?
Who / by?
Who / in it?
Enjoy it?

Like | **reading?**
rock / classical music?
going to the cinema?
ballet / theatre?
computer games?

Who
What | **favourite** | **actor / actress**
director / writer?
singer / group / musical?
film / book / play / opera / game?

Useful language

a Questions

Who's your favourite (actor)?

What kind of (books) do you like?

When did you last go to (the cinema)?

What did you see?

Who was in it?

Did you enjoy it?

Who was it by?

b Answers

My favourite (actor) is ...

It was brilliant.

It was really funny/sad/exciting, etc.

It was okay.

I really enjoyed it.

I didn't really enjoy it.

I hated it.

Real life

Arranging a night out

1 T8.7 Anna and her friend Tara often go out together. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.

a What film do they decide to watch?
b What time does the film start?
c Where do they decide to meet and at what time?

2 Put their conversation in order. Then listen again and check.

3 a T8.8 Listen and complete the sentences.

1 Let's _____ cinema!
2 What _____ ?
3 Why _____ that?
4 _____ the new Johnny Depp film?
5 What _____ on?
6 Why _____ first?
7 That's _____ .
8 _____ at about eight o'clock.

b Practise saying the sentences, copying the recording.

4 a Work in pairs. Write a dialogue arranging to go to the cinema together.

b Act out your dialogue in front of the class.

a ☐ Well, let's go to the cinema! What's on, do you know?

b ☐ 8.00. Yeah, perfect.

c [1] Tara, do you want to go out tomorrow night?

d ☐ Yeah, great. I love Johnny Depp! What time is it on? Have you got a newspaper?

e ☐ Okay, that's a good idea. Where do you want to meet for a drink?

f ☐ Well, why don't we have a drink first, then go at 9.30?

g ☐ Yeah here. Erm, let's see. It's on at either 7.30 or 9.30. What do you think?

h [2] Okay, but I haven't got much money.

i ☐ Mmm, I don't really like that sort of thing. How about the new Johnny Depp film? My sister saw it last weekend and she thought it was really good.

j ☐ There's an old Star Wars film – why don't we go and see that?

k ☐ How about Macy's? It's near the cinema. Let's meet at about 8.00. Is that okay for you?

STUDY...

Checking and revising

1 Can you make these sentences negative?

a Ehab ~~is~~ a doctor. *isn't*
b Sue and Paul are teachers.
c He was born in 1960.
d They were at university.
e He works in Damascus.
f They come from Ireland.
g He lived in Cairo in 1987.
h They got married last year.
i He's got three children.
j They've got a big house.

2 T8.9 Listen and tick the sentence you hear.

a She isn't married.
She wasn't married.
b He doesn't speak English.
He didn't speak English.
c They aren't at home.
They weren't at home.
d I've got a pen.
I haven't got a pen.
e I don't like sport.
I didn't like sport.
f She's got a car.
She hasn't got a car.

3 Listen again and repeat.

Pronunciation spot

Stressed syllables

a MD You can use your mini-dictionary to find the stress.

in·terest·ing /ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/ *adjective* unusual or exciting in a way that makes you think, and want to know more: *A good teacher can make any subject interesting.* | *There's a really interesting article about foxes in this month's 'Nature' magazine.*

The ' means that the next syllable is stressed.

b Find the stress in these words.

cartoon	comedy	historical
average	successful	popular
create	appear	romantic

c T8.10 Listen and repeat.

PRACTISE...

1 Describing films ☐

Complete the words to make films and adjectives.

a A c*a*rt*oo*n is usually e _ j _ y _ b _ e.
b A h _ r _ o _ film is always f _ i g h _ e _ i _ g.
c A c _ m _ d _ is f _ n _ y.
d A l _ v _ s _ o r _ is always r _ m _ n t _ c.
e A m _ s _ c _ l has often got a s _ l _ y story.
f An a _ t _ o _ film can be very v _ o _ e _ t.
g A s c _ _ n c _ f _ c _ i _ n film is often e _ c _ t _ n g.
h A h _ s t _ r _ c _ l film can be i _ t _ r _ s t _ n g or b _ r _ i _ g.

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, page 68.**

2 Past simple forms ☐

Write the Past simple forms.

a appear *appeared* c fall _____ e give _____ g drink _____
b find _____ d sleep _____ f earn _____ h cost _____

▶ **Need to check? Irregular verbs, page 149.**

3 Past simple negatives ☐

Complete the sentences about your country 100 years ago with a suitable verb in the negative.

a People *didn't play* computer games. d People _____ hamburgers.
b People _____ pop music. e People _____ television.
c People _____ cars. f People _____ jeans.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 155.**

4 Past simple questions ☐

Write the questions for these answers.

a My last holiday was in August. *When was your last holiday?*
b I went to Paris.
c I went with my sister.
d I got there by plane.
e We climbed the Eiffel Tower.
f I thought it was fantastic.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 155.**

5 Arranging a night out ☐

Put the words in the correct order.

PARAS: on Saturday / you / go to / want to / the cinema / Do ?
JOE: a good idea / That's ! on / What's ?
PARAS: Bollywood / new / There's / a / musical.
JOE: that sort of thing / I / like / really / don't.
we / don't / Why / go / film / to the new Will Smith?
PARAS: OK. / cinema / eight / meet / the / Let's / outside / at

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 76.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised.
Tick the ones you feel confident about.
Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 162
to check what you know!

MODULE 9

Buying and selling

- Comparative and superlative adjectives
- Reading: *The world's most famous markets*
- Vocabulary: Shops and shopping
- Real life: Asking in shops
- Task: Choose souvenirs from your country

Language focus 1

Comparative adjectives

1 a MD What do you know about cars? Think of an example for the following.

- a **fast** car *a Ferrari*
- an **expensive** car
- a **small** car
- a very **comfortable** car
- a very **ugly** car
- an **old** car
- an **easy** car to park

b MD Look at the adjectives in bold. Match them with their opposites in the box.

cheap	uncomfortable	difficult	new
slow	attractive	big	

fast — slow

2 Read about Juliana on the right. Answer the questions.

a What does she want to buy? Why?
b How much does she want to spend?

3 Look at the advertisements and the pictures. Which of these sentences are true?

a The Deluxe is older than the Micro. ✔
b The Micro is bigger than the Deluxe.
c The Deluxe is more expensive than the Micro.
d The Micro is easier to park than the Deluxe.
e The Deluxe is better for Juliana than the Micro.

Juliana is a student. She wants to buy an old car to drive to university with her three friends. She wants to spend about €900, but she doesn't know much about cars. She sees these two advertisements.

Grammar

1 **Complete the gaps in the comparative sentences.**
a *The Deluxe is older* _____ *the Micro.*
b *The Deluxe is* _____ *expensive* _____ *the Micro.*

2 **Look at these three types of comparatives.**
a One syllable: *old → older*
b Two syllables ending in -y: *easy → easier*
c Three (+) syllables: *expensive → more expensive*

Write the comparative form of the adjectives in exercise 1.

3 **Irregular comparatives:**
good → better, bad → worse

Read Language summary A on page 155.

Practice

1 Compare the cars.

a The Micro is (slow) than the Deluxe.
The Micro is slower than the Deluxe.
b The Micro is (cheap) the Deluxe.
c The Deluxe is (comfortable) the Micro.
d The Micro is (small) the Deluxe.
e The Deluxe is (difficult to park) the Micro.
f The Deluxe is (in good condition) the Micro.
g The Micro is (in bad condition) the Deluxe.

2 a MD Look at the photos and check the meaning of the adjectives in the boxes.

b Work in pairs. Use the adjectives to compare the products.

A Ferrari is faster than a Rolls Royce.

1

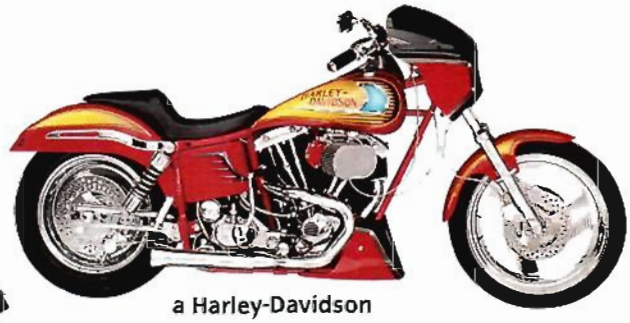
a Rolls Royce

a Ferrari

fast expensive attractive

2

a Vespa



a Harley-Davidson

slow easy to ride beautiful

Pronunciation

1 T9.1 Listen and notice the stressed and weak syllables.

• • /ə/ /ə/ •
A Ferrari is faster than a Rolls Royce.

• • /ə/ /ə/ •
A Swatch is cheaper than a Rolex.

2 T9.2 Look at the tapescript on page 170 and listen to more sentences about the photos. Practise the sentences paying attention to the stressed and weak syllables.

3

a Swatch

a Rolex

cheap smart good for children

4

cola

mineral water

sweet healthy nice

Language focus 2

Superlative adjectives

MD Why are these things famous? Read and check.

The King of Thailand owns the biggest diamond in the world. It is called *The Golden Jubilee* and it weighs 2.6 kg.

The most expensive car in the world is the Ferrari Enzo Coupé. It costs about $650,000 and it is also one of the fastest cars: it can go from 0–100 kmh in 3.65 seconds.

Macy's, in Manhattan, New York, is the busiest (and some people say the best) department store in the world. It has ten shopping floors and half a million items for sale.

Grammar

1 Complete the superlative sentences.

a *The Jubilee Diamond is* _____ *big* _____ *diamond in the world.*

b *The Ferrari Enzo is* _____ _____ *expensive car in the world.*

2 Use the text to complete the table.

adjective	comparative	superlative
fast	faster	the _____
big	bigger	the _____
busy	busier	the _____
expensive	more expensive	the _____
good	better	the _____

▶ Read Language summary B on page 156.

Practice

1 T9.3 Complete the questions with superlative adjectives. Choose the answers. Listen and check.

1 Where is _____ (tall) hotel in the world?
a Dubai b Bangkok c Hong Kong

2 Who is _____ (rich) person in the world?
a Bill Gates b The Sultan of Brunei
c Ingvar Kamprad, head of IKEA

3 Which is _____ (expensive) city in the world to buy a house or flat?
a Tokyo b London c Vienna

4 Where is _____ (old) university in the world?
a Bologna b Karueein c Oxford

5 What was _____ (successful) European football club in the twentieth century?
a Bayern Munich b Real Madrid c Manchester United

6 Where is _____ (high) town or city in the world?
a Cuzco, in Peru b La Paz, in Bolivia c Lhasa, in Tibet

7 What is _____ (common) word in the English language?
a to b a c the

8 Who were _____ (popular) group in the twentieth century?
a the Rolling Stones b the Eagles c the Beatles

2 a Look at page 147. Choose one of the topics.

b Write sentences about five of the questions.

My brother is the most untidy person I know.

Reading

1 Do you like going to street markets? Which is your favourite market? What can you buy there?

2 a MD Look at the photos of markets around the world. Which do you think is:

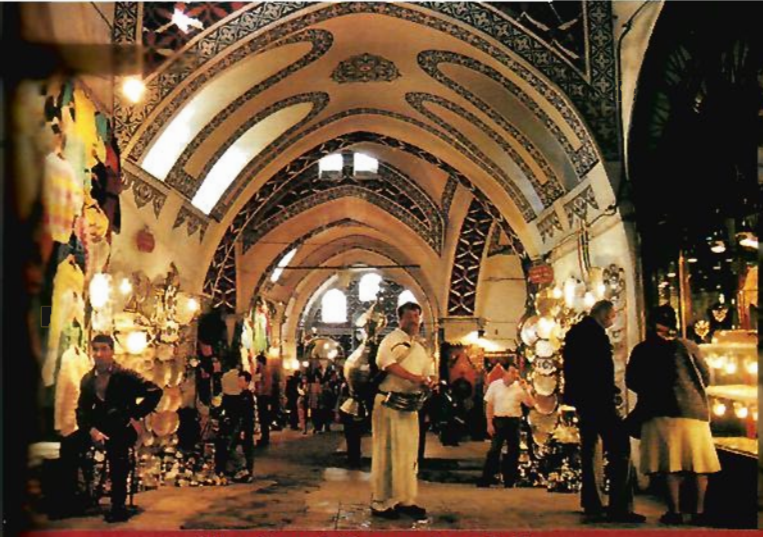
- the oldest?
- the most lively?
- the most colourful?
- the most unusual?
- the most similar to markets in your country?

b MD Check the meaning of these words. Can you see any in the photos?

a carpet a rug a flower a toy a gift
a bird a herb a decoration medicine

3 Read the text and answer the questions about each market.

a What is the name?
b Where is it?
c What can you buy there?
d When is it open?



The Grand Bazaar, Istanbul

Sonora Market, Mexico

The world's most famous markets

Do you want to buy a new pair of sunglasses? The latest CD? Or something for your dinner this evening? Nowadays you can shop by telephone, by post or by Internet; but for many people, the most exciting way to shop is also the most traditional – at a street market. You can find markets anywhere in the world. Here are five of them ...

The Grand Bazaar in Istanbul, Turkey, is more than 500 years old and it has more than four thousand shops under one roof! You can buy almost anything, but the most popular items for tourists are the beautiful rugs and carpets.

There are many 'floating markets' in Asia. Perhaps the most famous is in Thailand, at a place called Damnoen Saduak, 100 km from the capital city, Bangkok. From six in the morning to midday, every day, people sell fresh tropical fruit and vegetables from their boats.

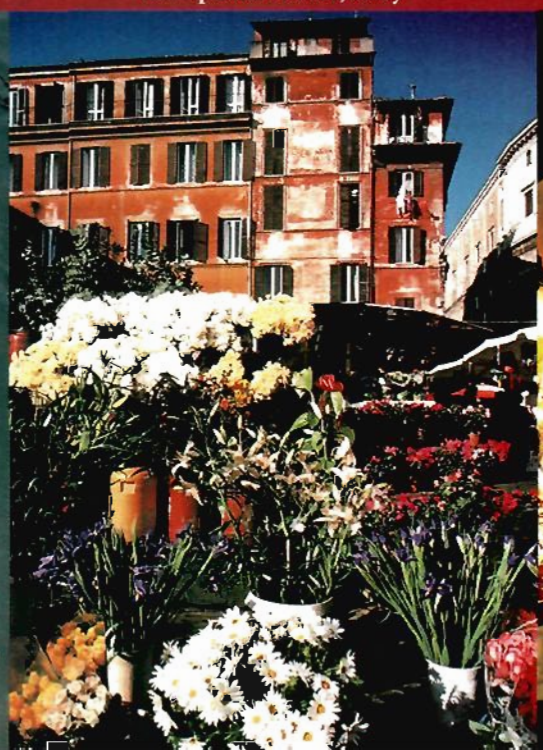
Many Italians say that the Campo de' Fiori, in the oldest part of Rome, is the most beautiful square (or 'piazza') in the world. It's the home of a colourful flower, fruit and vegetable market, open from seven o'clock in the morning to midday every day except Sunday. In the evening the piazza becomes a lively place to meet friends and to have a meal.

Every year, thousands of people from all over the world travel to Germany to visit the famous Christmas markets. The old town of Nurnberg has the biggest market, open from the end of November until Christmas. Here people can buy toys, hand-made gifts, Christmas decorations, and food and drink, or they can just enjoy the wonderful atmosphere!

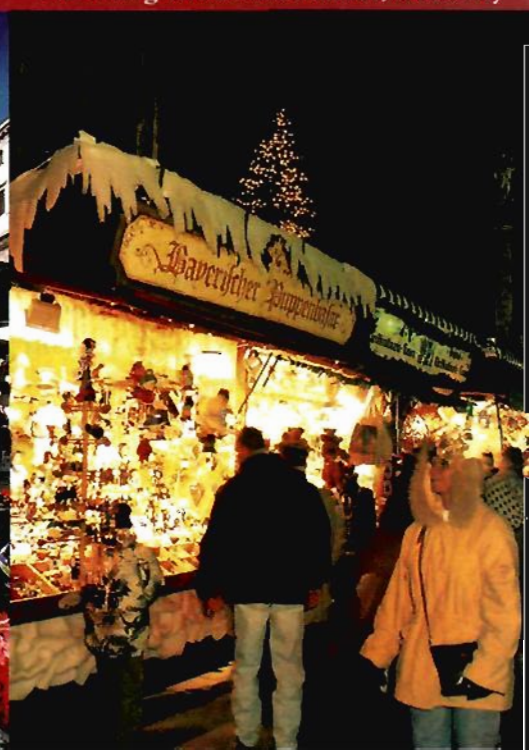
One of the world's most unusual markets is in Mexico City: at the Sonora Market. As well as toys and birds, you can buy herbs and natural medicines which (they say) can help with anything – from problems at work to problems with your marriage! It's open every day from early in the morning till late at night.

Floating Market, Thailand

Campo de' Fiori, Italy



Nurnberg Christmas Market, Germany



Vocabulary

Shops and shopping

1 Match the shops in the box to the pictures.

a clothes shop	a pharmacy	a dry-cleaner's	a butcher's	a hairdresser's
a post office	a bakery	a local shop	a gift shop	

2 MD Check the meaning of the words in bold and answer the questions.

a Where can you take your **clothes** when they're **dirty**? *a dry-cleaner's*
b Where can you **have a haircut**?
c Where do they **sell** cakes and bread?
d Where can you go for new **jeans**?
e Where can you **get** a **present** for a friend?
f Where do you **post** letters and **parcels**?
g Where can you **buy** sausages?
h Where can you **find everything** (food, drink, newspapers and magazines) in one small shop?
i Where can you buy **toothpaste** and **medicine**?

3 Think of one more thing you can buy or do in each shop.

Real life

Asking in shops

1 a MD Look at pictures a–e in a department store and the store directory. Which departments are they? Which floors are they on?

Store Directory

Basement
Food hall
Cook and Kitchenware
Luggage
Ground floor
Perfumery
Cosmetics
Handbags
Stationery
First floor
Ladies' clothes
Shoes
Children's clothes
Jewellery
Second floor
DVD/Video/Music
Computers and Gaming
Electrical goods
Men's clothes
Sports
Third floor
Furniture
Restaurant
Books

b T9.4 Anna visits five different departments. Match the recordings to the pictures.

Recording 1 = picture ☐
Recording 2 = picture ☐
Recording 3 = picture ☐
Recording 4 = picture ☐
Recording 5 = picture ☐

2 a Match the questions in A with the answers in B.

A

1 Do you take credit cards? g
2 Have you got this in a medium?
3 Do you sell diaries?
4 Which floor is that?
5 How much is it?
6 Can I have one of those, please?
7 What time does the store close?
8 Is there a restaurant or café here?

B

a It's on the ground floor.
b It's £25.
c This one?
d At eight o'clock.
e Yes, there's a restaurant on the fourth floor.
f Let me check for you.
g Yes, Visa or Mastercard.
h No, we don't. Try the stationery department.

b Listen again and check.

Pronunciation

1 T9.5 Listen to the questions in exercise 2a and notice the stress on the important words.

Do you take credit cards?

2 Mark the stresses on the other questions.

3 Practise saying the questions. Copy the polite intonation.

3 a Peter is on holiday. Look at his shopping list.

postcards ✓	sunglasses
T-shirt	toothpaste
stamps	bread
fruit	cake
batteries for camera	

b T9.6 Listen to his conversations in four different shops and tick the things on the list he buys.

c Work in pairs. Look at the tapescript on page 171 and practise the conversations.

4 Student A: Look at page 142. Student B: Look at page 145. Practise two conversations with a customer and shop assistant in a local shop.

Task: Choose souvenirs from your country

Preparation: listening

1 a Match the words and phrases in the box with the photos.

a leather bag	a CD	a doll	a lamp	a silk scarf	cheese

b Which country do you think these souvenirs come from?

2 T9.7 Listen to six people talking about the souvenirs in the photos. Number the souvenirs in the order they are mentioned.

Task: speaking

1 Work individually. Read about the people on page 143. Write down some souvenirs from your country (or from the country where you are now) for the people.

2 Work in small groups. Decide the best souvenir for each person.

▶ Useful language a and b

3 Tell the class what your group decided. Did you choose the same souvenirs?

▶ Useful language c

Useful language

a Giving your ideas

I think (a doll) is a good souvenir for (Anna).

(Thailand) is famous for (silk) so ...

You can buy some (really good cheese).

How about (a book)?

b Discussing

What do you think?

I think a (CD) is better because ...

I think the best thing to buy is a (book).

Yes, that's a good idea.

Yes, but ...

c Saying what you decided

For (Amy) we want to buy a ...

The best souvenir for (Tom) is a ...

In (Italy) we make/have the best (leather) so we decided to give (Helen) (a leather handbag).

STUDY...

Finding spelling in a dictionary (2)

1 MD You can use your mini-dictionary to find comparative and superlative forms.

cheap /tʃi:p/ *adjective* (cheaper) (cheapest)
something that is cheap does not cost very much money, or costs less money than you expect

2 Match A and B to make rules for the spellings of short adjectives.

A
a Most one syllable adjectives (e.g. *rich*) ☐
b Adjectives ending in 'e' (e.g. *nice*) ☐
c Adjectives ending in *one* consonant + vowel + consonant (e.g. *sad*) ☐
d Adjectives ending in 'y' (e.g. *friendly*) ☐

B
1 change to '-ier' or 'the -iest'.
2 take '-er' or 'the -est'.
3 double the final consonant and add '-er' or 'the -est'.
4 take '-r' or 'the -st'.

3 MD Write the comparative and superlative forms. Check in your mini-dictionary.

silly	great	true	hot	young
thin	old	friendly		

Pronunciation spot

The sound /ɪ/

a T9.8 Listen to the /ɪ/ sound in these superlative adjectives. Listen again and repeat.
oldest smallest fastest newest easiest slowest busiest

b T9.9 Listen to these words and underline the /ɪ/ sounds. Then listen again and repeat.
this English tissues business married places matches lived women dictionary minute

PRACTISE...

1 Comparative adjectives ☐

a Complete the questions with a comparative form.

1 Who's taller (tall), you or your teacher?
2 Who's _____ (young), you or your best friend?
3 Which is _____ (good), watching a DVD or going to the cinema?
4 Which is _____ (easy) for you, speaking or understanding English?
5 Which is _____ (important) for you, having a well-paid job or an interesting job?
6 Which month is _____ (hot) in your country, May or September?

b Now write your answers.

▶ Need to check? Language summary A, page 155.

2 Superlative adjectives ☐

Write the superlative form and complete the sentences to make them true for you.

a The busiest (busy) month of the year is December .
b The _____ (good) day of the week is _____ .
c The _____ (bad) day of the week is _____ .
d The _____ (violent) film I know is _____ .
e The _____ (sad) film I know is _____ .
f The _____ (exciting) holiday in my life was in _____ .
g The _____ (boring) holiday in my life was in _____ .

▶ Need to check? Language summary B, page 156.

3 Shops ☐

Write the shops where you bought these things.

Yesterday I went to the shops and I bought some (a) breakfast cereal and a newspaper. Then I bought some (b) chicken and some (c) cakes and bread. I also bought some new (d) jeans and I left my (e) coat for cleaning. Then I had a (f) haircut.

a local shop
b b_____
c b_____
d c_____ s_____
e d_____ c_____
f h_____

▶ Need to check? Vocabulary, page 82.

4 Asking in shops ☐

Put the questions in the correct order.

a take / cards / you / Do / credit? Do you take credit cards?
b I / of / have / one / Can / please / those?
c a large / this / got / Have / in / you?
d this / is / much / How?
e you / time / What / do / close?

▶ Need to check? Real life, page 82.

REMEMBER! Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 162 to check what you know!

MODULE 10

Street life

- Present continuous
- Present simple or continuous?
- Vocabulary: Clothes
- Listening: People who wear uniforms
- Vocabulary and writing: Describing people
- Task: Complete and describe a picture
- Real life: Street talk

Language focus 1

Present continuous

1 Look at the three people who are talking on their mobiles. Do they look happy or not?

2 T10.1 Listen to their conversations and answer the questions.

a Who are they talking to?
b What do they say they are doing?
c Are they telling the truth or not?

3 T10.2 Listen and complete the sentences.

a I _____ for a bus.
b I _____ an important report for my boss.
c I _____ home.

Grammar

1 **We use the Present continuous for actions happening now or around now.**

2 **Complete the gaps in the Present continuous forms.**

+	I'm He/She'____ You/We/They'____	working late.
−	I'm not He/She ____ You/We/They ____	tell____ the truth.
?	What { am I ____ he/she/it ____ you/we/they }	doing?

▶ Read Language summary A on page 156.

Pronunciation

1 T10.3 Listen to ten sentences. Which picture(s) above do they describe?

2 T10.4 Listen and practise the /ɪŋ/ sound at the end of the *-ing* forms.

• /ɪŋ/ laughing • /ɪŋ/ chatting • /ɪŋ/ raining

3 Look at the tapescript for recording 3 on page 171. Listen again and practise the sentences.

Practice

1 MD Use your mini-dictionary to check the spelling of these *-ing* forms.

a	eat	c	read	e	sit	g	drive	i	ride
b	buy	d	play	f	drink	h	get	j	clean

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer about the photos below.

What's he doing?

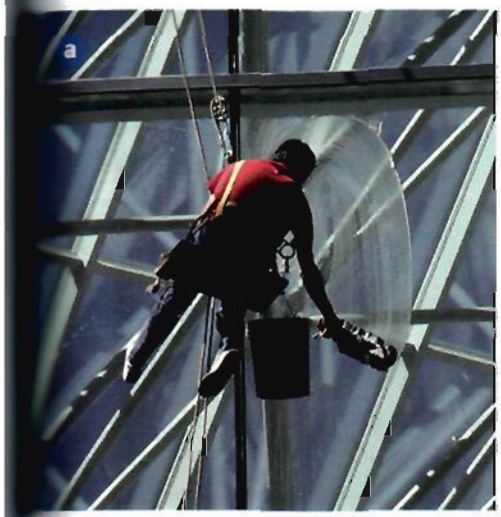
What are they doing?

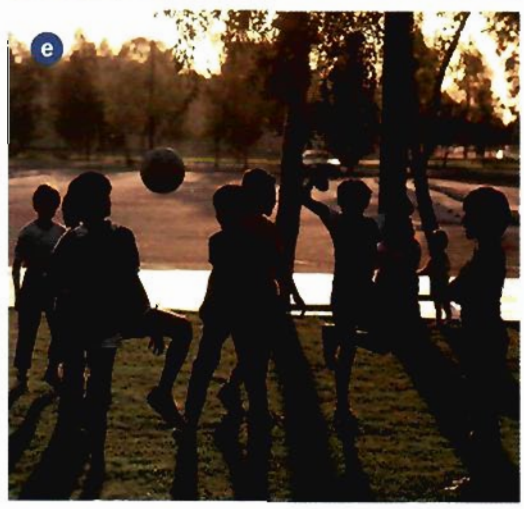
He's cleaning windows.

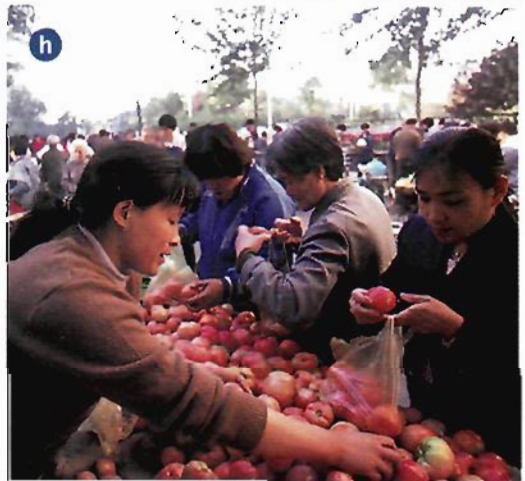
They're playing football.

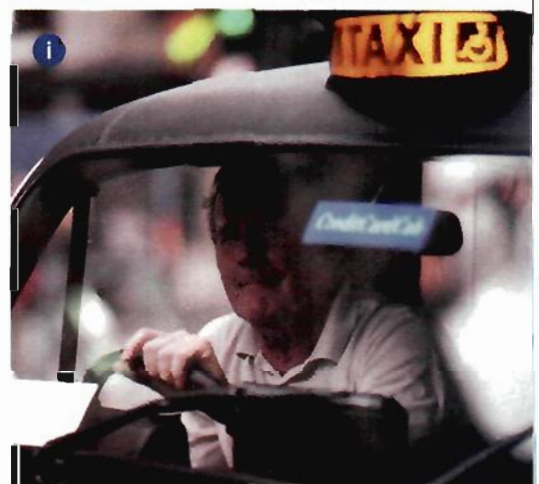
3 *Make true sentences for you.* Then compare with a partner.

a I (sit) near the door.
I'm not sitting near the door.
I'm sitting near the board.
b I (wear) trainers.
c I (chew) gum.
d I (hold) a pencil.
e We (listen) to music.
f I (wear) a jumper.
g Our teacher (write) on the board.
h We (work) hard today.









Vocabulary
Clothes

1 a Look at the people in the pictures. Where are they going?

b MD Tick the things you can see in the pictures? Which things are the people wearing? Which are they carrying?

trousers	a skirt	a dress
jeans	shorts	earrings
sandals	a scarf	shoes
tights	boots	a shirt
a hat	trainers	a suit
a tie	a jumper	a jacket
a coat	socks	a T-shirt
a belt	a handbag	a backpack
a briefcase	gloves	a sports bag

2 Work in pairs. Take turns to describe one of the people in the pictures. Do not say who it is. Your partner guesses.

This person is wearing a suit, a blue shirt …

3 Describe a student in your class for your partner to guess.

Pronunciation

1 T10.5 Look at the pairs of words. Are the vowel sounds underlined the same (S) or different (D)? Listen and check.

a t<u>ie</u> / t<u>i</u>ghts S	f sh<u>i</u>rt / sh<u>o</u>rts
b c<u>oa</u>t / sc<u>a</u>rf D	g sk<u>i</u>rt / s<u>ui</u>t
c sh<u>oe</u>s / b<u>oo</u>ts	h s<u>a</u>ndals / h<u>a</u>ndbag
d b<u>e</u>lt / dr<u>e</u>ss	i j<u>u</u>mper / j<u>a</u>cket
e s<u>o</u>cks / gl<u>o</u>ves	j j<u>ea</u>ns / <u>ea</u>rrings

2 Practise saying the words. Pay attention to the vowel sounds.

Street fashion

We went out onto the streets to see what people are really wearing this summer …

Listening

People who wear uniforms

Andy

Michelle

1 a Andy and Michelle wear a uniform in their job. What are their jobs?

b MD What clothes do they wear in their job? Are their uniforms smart / ugly / heavy / uncomfortable?

c T10.6 Who do you think wears the following? Listen and check.

a black and white hat	a hat that is 300 years old	
a white shirt	leather trousers	black trousers
very big shoes	tights	

2 Listen again and answer the questions.

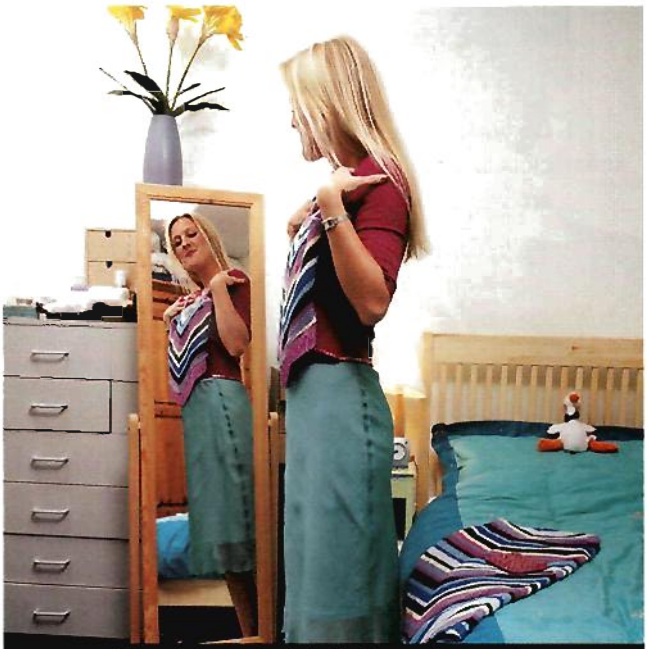
a Why is Andy's uniform uncomfortable?
b Why does he wear women's tights?
c Do you think he likes his uniform?
d Does Michelle like her uniform generally? Why?
e Which part of her uniform doesn't she like? Why?

3 Discuss these questions.

- Do you wear a uniform at school or work? Do you like it? If not, would you like to wear a uniform?
- Who wears a uniform in your country? Which uniforms do you like best?

Language focus 2

Present simple or continuous?



It's Friday night and Michelle is getting ready to go out. At work, Michelle wears dark colours and very little make-up, so when she goes out she wears bright colours. This evening she's wearing a new pink top and a blue skirt, and quite a lot of make-up.

MD Look back at the photo of Michelle in uniform and the photo of her above. In what ways does she look different? Read and answer the questions.

a What's Michelle doing at the moment?
b What's she wearing?
c What kind of colours does she usually wear at work?
d What colours does she wear to go out?
e Does she wear a lot of make-up at work?
f Is she wearing make-up tonight?

Grammar

1 **Choose the correct alternative.**

Present simple:
*She **wears** dark colours at work.*
This is usually true / happening now.
Present continuous:
*She's **wearing** a pink top tonight.*
This is usually true / happening now.

2 **a Words we use with the Present simple:**
usually always often normally every day

b Words we use with the Present continuous:
now today at the moment

▶ Read Language summary B on page 156.

Practice

1 a Choose the correct tense for the questions.

What do you wear?

1 Do you usually wear / Are you usually wearing smart or casual clothes at college/work? What kind of clothes do you wear / are you wearing today?

2 Do you wear / Are you wearing boots, trainers, sandals or shoes today? What kind of shoes do you normally wear / are you normally wearing?

3 Do you usually wear / Are you usually wearing a watch?

4 Do you wear / Are you wearing socks when the weather's hot?

5 Do you normally wear / Are you normally wearing perfume or aftershave? Do you wear / Are you wearing any at the moment?

6 Do you ever wear / Are you ever wearing glasses?

7 Do you wear / Are you wearing any jewellery today?

8 Do you wear / Are you wearing shorts a lot in the summer?

9 Do you wear / Are you wearing make-up at the moment? Do you normally wear / Are you normally wearing make-up?

10 Do you ever wear / Are you ever wearing a hat? When?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

2 a Which questions are the people below discussing? Put the verbs in the correct tense, Present simple or Present continuous.

1 I usually (a) _____ (wear) make-up when I (b) _____ (go) to work, and when I (c) _____ (go) out in the evening of course, but I (d) _____ (not wear) any at the moment because I (e) _____ (work) at home today.

2 I'm quite lucky – in my office everyone's quite casual. People normally (f) _____ (wear) jeans and maybe a shirt or jumper. Even the boss (g) _____ (not wear) a suit. Today it's really hot so I (h) _____ (wear) shorts and sandals, and I (i) _____ (not wear) socks.

3 I (j) _____ (wear) shorts today because I (k) _____ (go) to the gym and it's very hot, but I (l) _____ (not normally wear) them because I (m) _____ (hate) my legs!

b T10.7 Listen and check your answers.

3 Work in groups. Tell other students about what you normally wear at work/school, at the weekend and when you go out in the evening.

Vocabulary and writing

Describing people

1 MD Look at the pictures. Who:

a has got a moustache? *Mike*
b has got long hair?
c has got blue eyes?
d is in his/her thirties?
e is wearing casual clothes?
f is black?
g is slim?
h has got a beard?
i has got a shaved head?
j has got short hair?
k has got blond(e) hair?
l is well-built?
m is wearing smart clothes?
n has got medium-length hair?
o has got a pony-tail?
p is in his/her twenties?
q is very good-looking?

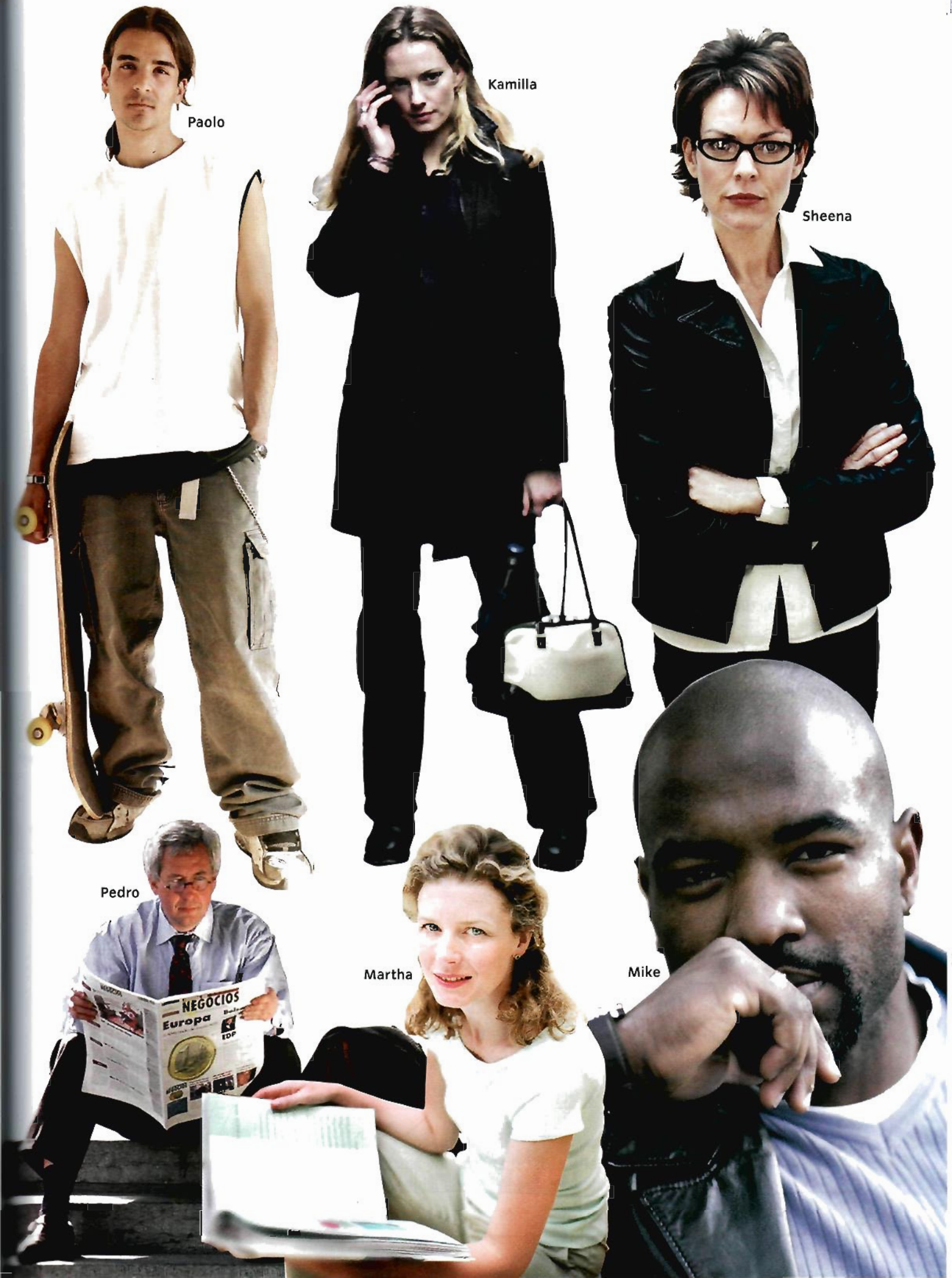
2 Which other words can replace the blue words?

a He's got **blond** hair.
b She's got **blue** eyes.
c He's got a **moustache**.
d She's in **her thirties**.
e She's **tall and slim**.

3 Work in pairs. Use the sentences in exercises 1 and 2 to describe the six people.

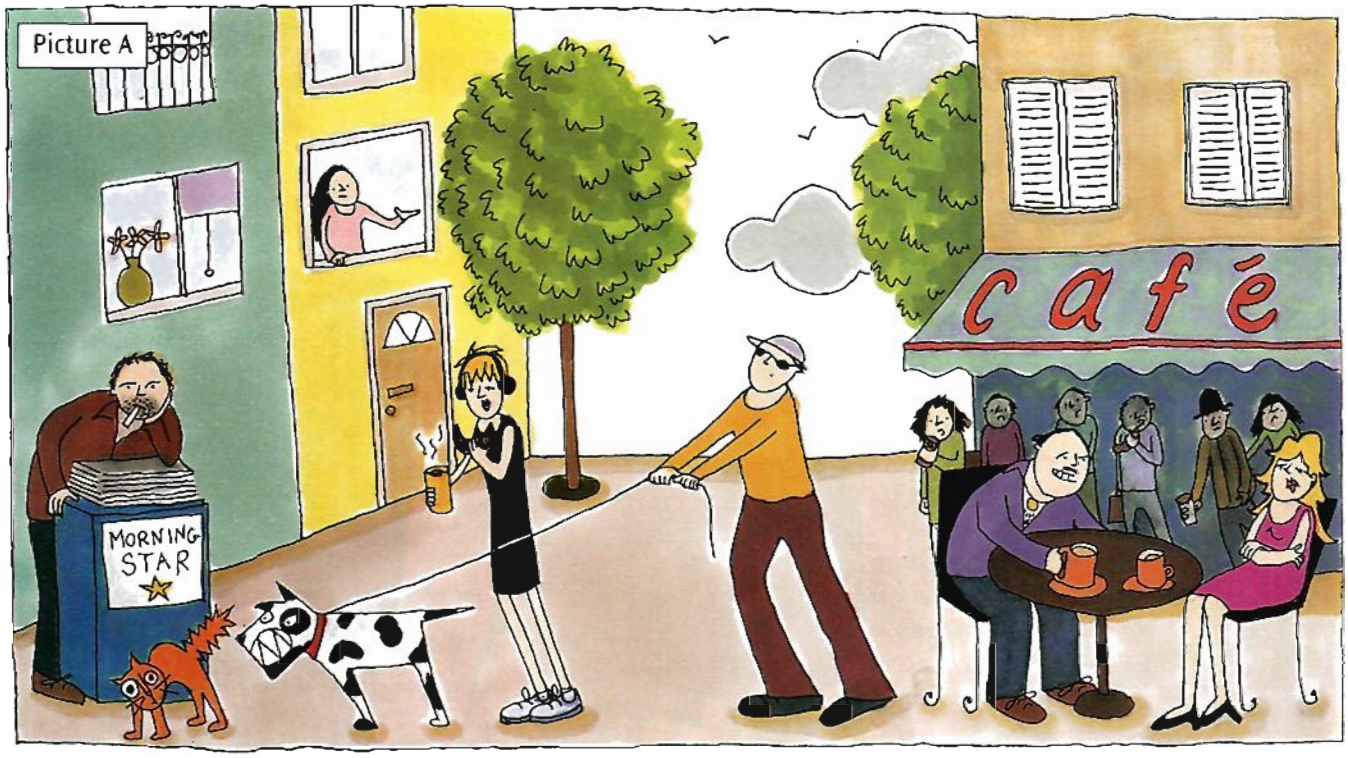
4 Write a description of yourself or of a famous person you all know. Describe your (or their) appearance and how you (or they) dress.

I'm (not very tall).
I've got (short blond hair and green eyes).
I'm in my (thirties).
I wear (glasses).
I usually wear (jeans and jumpers).
Today I'm wearing (a suit and tie).


Paolo
Kamilla
Sheena
Pedro
Martha
Mike
NEGOCIOS
Europa

Task: Complete and describe a picture

Preparation: listening



1 Look at picture A and answer the questions on the right.

a Is it morning or evening?
b What is the dog doing? What colour is it?
c What's the girl doing? What's she wearing? What has she got in her right hand?
d What's the young man wearing?
e Describe the two people in the café.

2 T10.8 Listen to someone describing picture A and find four mistakes.

Task: speaking

1 MD Look at picture B showing the same street in the evening. Add ten new things from the box below to the picture. Do not show anybody your picture.

food and drinks
short/long hair
happy/unhappy faces
beards or moustaches
extra clothes (hats, ties, belts)
people at the windows
accessories (sunglasses, mobiles)

2 Work in pairs. Take turns to describe your picture and your partner draws it on the extra copy of Picture B on page 146. Don't look at your partner's picture. Ask questions to complete the picture.

▶ Useful language a and b

3 When you have both finished, compare your picture with your partner's original. Are they the same or not? What are the differences?

Useful language

a Asking questions

What's the woman (on the right) doing?

What's the man (in the middle) holding?

What's he/she wearing?

What's happening in the rooms (above) the café?

What kind of hair has he/she got?

Is he/she smiling?

b Describing your picture

It's raining.

He's got long hair.

She's eating (an ice cream).

Real life

Street talk

1 a T10.9 MD Tick (✓) the correct thing to say in each situation. Listen and check.

You are in the street and ...

1 You don't know the time. How do you ask?
- **a** Excuse me, have you got the time, please?
- **b** Please what time is it, sir?
- **c** Tell me the time, please.

2 You are looking for a seat in a café. What do you say?
- **a** I'd like to sit here.
- **b** Is anyone sitting here?
- **c** Con you move, please?

3 A bus is coming. You want to know if it is going to the city centre.
- **a** Would you like to go to the city centre?
- **b** How much is it to the city centre?
- **c** Is this bus going to the city centre?

4 You want to pork your car but you do not understand the sign on the road. What do you ask?
- **a** Am I parking here?
- **b** Is it okay to park here?
- **c** Do you want to park here?

5 You only have a five-pound note and you need some coins to pay for the car park. What do you say?
- **a** Excuse me, have you got any change, please?
- **b** I'd like some change, please.
- **c** Give me some change, please.

6 You are trying to find the station in a strange town. What do you ask?
- **a** What's the station?
- **b** How long is the station?
- **c** Is this the way to the station?

7 You want to know when the shops close on Saturdays. What do you ask?
- **a** Are the shops closed on Saturdays?
- **b** What time do the shops close on Saturdays?
- **c** What time are the shops closing on Saturdays?

b Listen again and write the answers.

Pronunciation

1 T10.10 Listen and notice the polite intonation in the questions. Listen again and repeat, copying the voices on the recording.

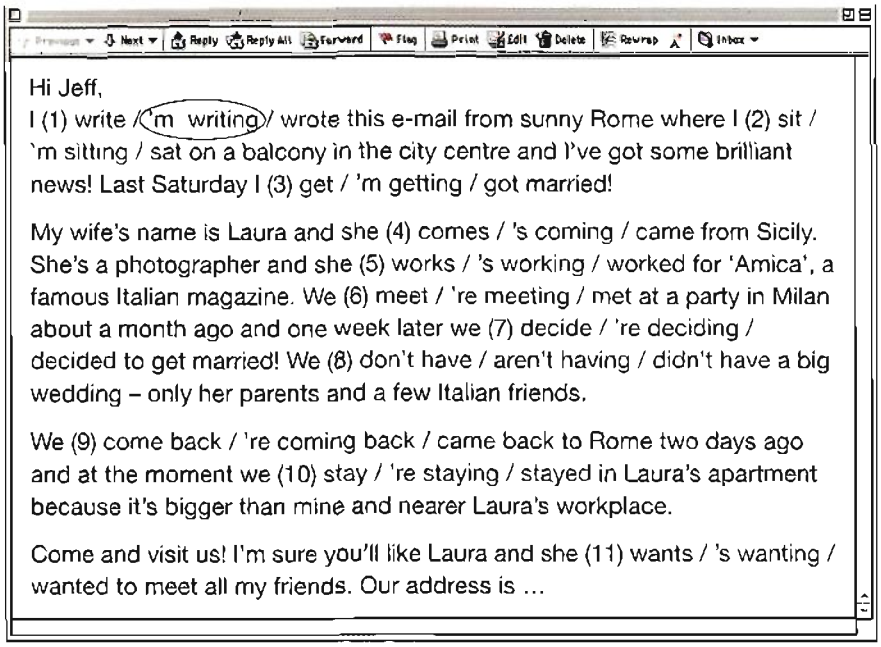
2 Practise the conversations with a partner.

2 Choose five of the questions. Walk around the class imagining that you are in the street. Ask the questions to other students. They must answer politely.

CONSOLIDATION

A Grammar: Present simple, Present continuous, Past simple

Choose the correct form of the verb.



Hi Jeff,

I (1) write / 'm writing / wrote this e-mail from sunny Rome where I (2) sit / 'm sitting / sat on a balcony in the city centre and I've got some brilliant news! Last Saturday I (3) get / 'm getting / got married!

My wife's name is Laura and she (4) comes / 's coming / came from Sicily. She's a photographer and she (5) works / 's working / worked for 'Amica', a famous Italian magazine. We (6) meet / 're meeting / met at a party in Milan about a month ago and one week later we (7) decide / 're deciding / decided to get married! We (8) don't have / aren't having / didn't have a big wedding – only her parents and a few Italian friends.

We (9) come back / 're coming back / came back to Rome two days ago and at the moment we (10) stay / 're staying / stayed in Laura's apartment because it's bigger than mine and nearer Laura's workplace.

Come and visit us! I'm sure you'll like Laura and she (11) wants / 's wanting / wanted to meet all my friends. Our address is ...

B Reading and speaking: Snacks around the world

1 Read about snacks in Germany, Brazil and Japan. Complete the gaps with *a/an*, *some*, *any* or – (no word).

'Well I often have (1)__*a*__ snack at about eleven in the morning. I usually go to a kiosk near here and buy (2)_____ sausage, and then I eat it, standing up at a small table near the kiosk. Then at about four o'clock we usually stop work and have (3)_____ cup of coffee and (4)_____ cakes.'
Suzanne, Germany

'I don't usually have (5)_____ food in the middle of the morning, but in the afternoon, at about five o'clock, I sometimes have a coffee. Yesterday, for example, I had (6)_____ bread roll and (7)_____ cheese. I get very hungry in the afternoons! Oh, yes, and I had (8)_____ iced tea. You can buy it at the beach or on the streets – it's very popular in Brazil.'
Renato, Brazil

'In Japan we eat food from all over the world, and young people like European snacks. Older people like more traditional food. For example, every afternoon my grandfather has (9)_____ Japanese sweets with traditional green tea. At work, on weekdays we usually have a 'three o'clock snack'. Today I had (10)_____ biscuits and tea, but no milk! I find it very strange that English people have milk in their tea!'
Mariko, Japan

2 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

a Do you have snacks between meals?
b What did you have yesterday?

C Speaking: Real life

1 What do you say in the following situations?

a You are in a restaurant and you want to pay. What do you say to the waiter?
b You are in a street market. You want to buy a T-shirt. Ask about the price.
c You are phoning a pizza restaurant. You want two large pizzas. What do you say?
d You are buying a ticket in a railway station. The clerk says the price of the ticket but you don't understand him. What do you say?
e You are in a shop. You want to buy some shampoo but you can't see any. What do you ask the shop assistant?
f You are in a shop and you want to buy a T-shirt, but it's too small for you. What do you ask the shop assistant?
g You are in a shop. An assistant asks you 'Can I help you?' but you don't want to buy anything at the moment. What do you say?

2 C1 Listen and check. Are your questions the same?

3 Practise the situations in pairs.

D Listening: Song: *Return to Sender*

C2 Work in pairs. Student A: Look at page 143. Student B: Look at page 144. Listen to the song and complete the gaps. Then compare your answers with your partner.

MODULES 6–10

E Reading and speaking: Comparatives and superlatives

1 Read about four holidays. Which country is each holiday in? Where can you:

a see a lot of animals?
b go skiing?
c go to the beach?
d visit a historic town?

Skiing holiday

Courchevel, in the French Alps, has the largest ski area in the world with 250 lifts and 600 km of perfect snow. The night life is very active, there are bars and clubs open till late, and fantastic restaurants for all tastes.

The Hotel D'Armor is a modern building with 350 rooms, a swimming pool and sauna, and it's only five minutes from the nearest ski lift.

Prices from €699.00 a week, including ski pass and ski hire.

www.D'Armor.uk

Holiday in Turkey

Situated in beautiful Ölüdeniz, we are only five minutes from the sea. Our very modern Turkish apartment sleeps five and has its own small garden. The town of Fethiye, with its old streets and buildings, is only fifteen km away.

If you want a quiet, peaceful break near the sea, then this is perfect for you!

€650 a week

hotels.wec-net.com.

Holiday in Greece

One and two bedroom traditional apartments near the small but cosmopolitan town of Agios Ioannis on the Pelion peninsula. Enjoy the sun and the wonderful Greek food!

The apartments are self-catering and are only thirty minutes' walk from the beautiful Papa Nero beach.

Only **€450 a week** for a two bedroom apartment.

www.heliostravel.co.uk

African Safari

Kenya – Tanzania – Namibia – Botswana – South Africa – Uganda – Zambia and Malawi.

We are simply the best for safaris. Small groups, friendly guides. Come canoeing, riding and camping! See elephants, lions and other animals in the wild!

Tours are three, five or six weeks.

Prices from €1,350 for three weeks.

Tel 020 7482 142

www.africanadven.co.uk

2 Make eight sentences comparing the holidays using the adjectives in the box.

expensive	cheap	long	quiet	exciting	good for families	near the sea	good for sport

The skiing holiday is better for sport than the holiday in Greece.
The holiday in Greece is the cheapest.

3 a Which two holidays might be suitable for these people?

1 Adriana (22) and Sueli (23) are from Mexico. They like exciting holidays and want to meet other young people. They like dancing and sport. They want to go on holiday for two or three weeks, but they don't want to spend a lot of money.

2 Tanya and Rod Kilroy are from Canada. They've got two children, Jayne, aged 6, and Tom, aged 8, and they are looking for a quiet family holiday near the sea. They like old places. They haven't got a lot of money.

b Compare the two holidays you chose and decide which is the best.

F Vocabulary

Find three words in the word square for each topic.

O	R	A	N	G	E	J	U	I	C	E	C
B	A	K	E	R	Y	E	P	B	E	N	L
I	C	H	E	A	S	A	T	U	R	P	O
B	U	S	Y	D	W	N	O	S	E	O	T
O	P	U	N	U	T	S	Y	Z	A	T	H
U	B	I	W	A	I	L	O	R	L	G	E
G	A	T	I	T	R	O	U	S	E	R	S
H	W	I	N	E	X	S	N	E	W	A	H
T	R	O	F	E	L	L	G	Z	I	P	O
U	O	Y	A	R	D	E	C	I	D	E	P
N	T	A	B	U	T	C	H	E	R	S	U
B	E	L	I	E	V	E	W	B	E	E	R

a food	grapes
b drink	
c clothes	
d regular verbs	
e past verbs	
f adjectives	
g shops	

MODULE 11

The world around us

- *can* and *can't* for ability
- Question words
- Use of articles (3)
- Vocabulary: Animals and natural features
- Reading: *Amazing facts about the natural world*
- Real life: Saying quantities and big numbers
- Listening: Man's best friends?
- Task: Devise a general knowledge quiz

Vocabulary

Animals and natural features

a Which things in the box can you see in the photos? Write the words in the correct column.

a bird	a mountain	a river
an insect	a human being	the earth
a chimpanzee	an elephant	the moon
a volcano	a lake	a kangaroo
a snail	a donkey	a dolphin

animals/ living things	geographical features	planets, etc.
a bird		

b Can you add any more words to each category?

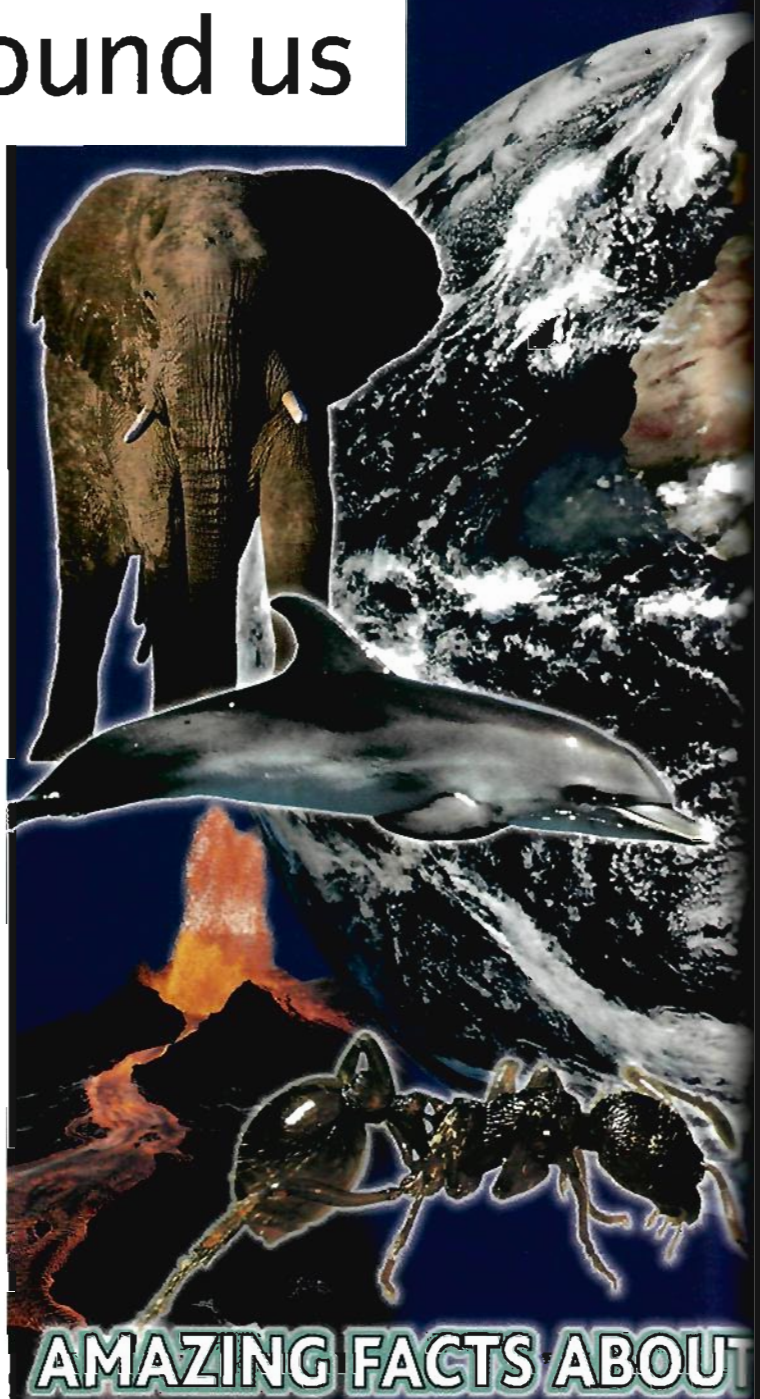
Reading

1 MD Read the facts in the text. One is false. Can you guess which? (Check your answer on page 143.)

2 Why are these numbers mentioned in the text? Look back and check, if necessary.

3 years	8 kg	10%	240	1,500 kph
40,000 km	18,000,000		10,000,000,000,000	

3 Which facts do you find most amazing? Why?



AMAZING FACTS ABOUT

Did you know ...?

- You share your birthday with around eighteen million other people in the world.
- Snails can sleep for up to three years.
- Donkeys kill more people in the world every year than plane crashes.
- The Arctic Tern, a bird which lives in North America and the Arctic, flies to the Antarctic every year – a journey of about forty thousand kilometres.
- There are at least ten thousand billion ants in the world, but only about six and a half billion human beings. That means there are around one thousand five hundred ants for every human being.
- The Earth rotates at around one thousand five hundred kilometres per hour.
- Because of the Earth's rotation, you can throw a ball further if you throw it west.

THE NATURAL WORLD

- Elephants can't jump, pigs can't look up at the sky and kangaroos can't walk backwards.
- Africa is the only continent in the world that doesn't have an active volcano.
- Dogs can't see colours. Guide dogs watch the traffic to see when it is safe to cross – they can't see the difference between red and green traffic lights.
- Chimpanzees can't talk but they can learn sign language. Some chimps learn up to two hundred and forty different signs.
- About ten per cent of people in the world are left-handed. Studies show that dogs and cats also prefer to use either their right or left paws. So check if you have a right or a left-handed pet!
- The average person eats around 8 kilos of dirt during their lifetime. This is because of badly washed fruit and vegetables.

Language focus 1

can and *can't* for ability

Grammar

1 Underline three facts in the text that tell you about animals' abilities.

2 Complete the gaps with *can* or *can't*.

(+) Chimpanzees _____ read sign language.

(−) Elephants _____ jump.

(?) _____ dogs see colours?

▶ Read Language summary A on page 156.

Practice

1 MD Make at least six sentences that you know are true using words from each of the boxes and *can* or *can't*.

chimpanzees	kangaroos	elephants	ants
dolphins	dogs	parrots	newborn babies

fly	jump (high)	swim	talk	run fast
see colours	walk	climb trees	carry heavy things	

Dog's can't see colours.

Pronunciation

T11.1 Look at the tapescript on page 172. Listen and notice the stress and weak forms. Listen again and repeat.

• /kən/ • Dogs can swim.

• /kɑ:nt/ • Elephants can't jump.

2 Ask and answer with other students. Try to find one student for each activity.

Who in the class can ...

a play the guitar?
b mend a car?
c write with their other hand?
d read really fast?
e make clothes?
f play chess?
g read music?
h sing well?

Can you play chess?

Yes, but not very well.

No, I can't.

Language focus 2

Question words

1 a Work in pairs. How many questions in the Animal quiz can you answer without looking back at the text?

b Look back at the text and check your answers.

2 Circle the question word in each question.

Grammar

1 There are many two-word questions with *how*, *what* and *which*. Match the question words to the answers.

a How far ...?	Los Angeles.
b How tall ...?	Every day.
c How often ...?	Lions.
d How long ...?	Ten metres.
e How fast ...?	Forty kilometres an hour.
f Which city ...?	Ten kilometres.
g Which animals ...?	Rock and pop.
h What kinds of music ...?	Three hours.

2 Do you remember? Choose the correct alternative.

We use:

- *How many* with countable / uncountable nouns.
- *How much* with countable / uncountable nouns.

3 We use *what* when there are a large number of possible answers.

***What** is the population of China?*

We use *which* when there are only a few possible answers.

***Which** continent has no active volcanoes?*

▶ Read Language summary B on page 157.

Practice

1 Choose the correct question word.

a Which / What do kangaroos eat?
b How much / How many water do people need to drink every day?
c What / Which do you like best, dogs or cats?
d How much / How many pets have you got?
e How much / How long do elephants usually live?
f How far / How often do you need to feed a baby?
g How fast / How long does the average person walk?
h How far / How many can you swim?
i How long / How often do you go swimming?
j Which / What is your dog's name?

Animal quiz

1 How much dirt does the average person eat during their life?
2 What kind of animals can't jump?
3 Which continent has no active volcanoes?
4 How fast does the earth rotate?
5 How many ants are there in the world?
6 How long can snails sleep?
7 How do guide dogs know when to cross the road?
8 How far do Arctic Terns fly every year?
9 What is the present population of the world?

2 a Make questions to ask your partner. Complete each question in A with words from B, C and, if necessary, D.

A	B	C	D
How far		read	
Which languages		study	
How often		run	
How fast		swim	
What kind of food	do you	speak	every day
Which sports	can you	play	every night
How many cups of coffee		drink	every week
How many hours		like	
Which newspaper		sleep	
How well		ride a bike	
		type	
		walk	

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer your questions.

Real life

Saying quantities and big numbers

1 Match the numbers in A with how you say them in B.

A	B
a 50 kph	five thousand
b 500 kg	five billion
c 505	five hundred kilos
d 5,000	five million
e 50,000	five point five
f 500,000	five hundred thousand
g 5,000,000	one metre fifty-five centimetres
h 5,000,000,000	fifty thousand
i 5.5	fifty kilometres per hour
j 1 m 55 cm	five hundred and five

2 T11.2 listen and write down the ten numbers you hear. Then listen again and repeat.

a 400

3 a Complete the questions with the words in the box.

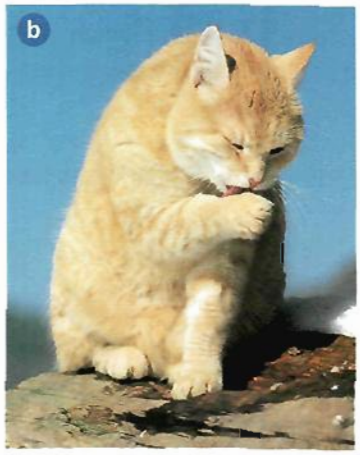
How far	How fast	How many (x2)
How much (x2)	How old	
How tall	What (x2)	

1 _____ is the speed limit on motorways in your country?
2 _____ can you drive in town centres?
3 _____ is the population of your country, approximately?
4 _____ people live in your town?
5 _____ is the average woman?
6 _____ does the average man weigh?
7 _____ is your city from the coast?
8 _____ students are there in your school, approximately?
9 _____ , approximately, is your house?
10 _____ does the average person earn in your country?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Don't worry if your answers are not exact.

Listening

Man's best friends?



1 Discuss these questions.

- Do you have a pet cat or dog? If not, would you like one? Why / Why not?
- Do you have any other pets?
- Do you know any pets that can do clever things?

2 MD Look at the activities below. Which can you see in the photos? Which do you associate with cats (C), which with dogs (D) and which with both (B)?

being pregnant	having kittens
racing	*helping the blind*
sleeping a lot	hunting
finding drugs for customs officers	
keeping themselves very clean	

3 a How many questions can you answer?

1 How many domestic cats are there in the world today?
2 What do they eat?
3 How many hours a day do they sleep?
4 How long are female cats pregnant?
5 How many kittens do they have at one time?
6 How many breeds (kinds) of cats are there?
7 What is special about sphinx cats?

b T11.3 Listen to the first part of a radio programme about pets, and check your answers. Did anything surprise you?

4 T11.4 The second part of the programme is about dogs. Read, then listen and complete the gaps.

People say that (a) *a dog is a man's best friend*. People and dogs first started living together about ten thousand years ago. Now there are (b) _____ dogs just in the USA. The Americans spend over (c) _____ on dog food every year – four times what they spend on baby food!

Altogether there are about (d) _____ breeds of dog. Many dogs work for humans, doing jobs such as helping the blind, helping the police and customs officers to find drugs and even racing! Greyhound racing is popular (e) _____ . The fastest greyhounds can run as fast as (f) _____ .

Perhaps the most famous working dog was Rin Tin Tin, who died in (g) _____ . He earned his money by (h) _____ . He made fifty films and earned about (i) _____ for each one!

Language focus 3

Use of articles (3)

1 Read what three people say about pets. Who do you agree with?

"We all love animals in my family – we've got a cat, a dog and a rabbit. People think that dogs don't like cats, but our dog's really friendly to the cat and the rabbit – it's really sweet."
Jack, 8

"I love dogs, especially big dogs, but I haven't got one because I think it's cruel to keep big dogs in flats. The dog in the flat next door to me is really unhappy – it just walks up and down the balcony all day when the owners are at work. It's really sad."
Alex, 31

"I don't really like animals much, especially cats. I hate cats. I hate the way they rub against your legs – ugh!"
Paula, 23

2 Underline the animals in the text above. Do they have *a*, *the* or no article?

Grammar

Read the rules about the use of the article in English. Tick (✓) the rules if they are the same in your language, and write a cross (✗) if they are different.

1 We use *a/an* to talk about things for the first time or when we don't know which one.
We've got a dog, a cat and a rabbit.

2 We use *the* to talk about specific things, or when we know which one.
Our dog's really friendly to the cat and the rabbit.
The dog in the flat next door is really unhappy.

3 We use no article to talk about things in general.
Dogs don't like cats.

▶ Read Language summary C on page 157.

Practice

1 Which of these things do you like / love / hate / not mind? Write sentences, then compare with a partner.

kittens	big dogs	snakes	spiders	winter
windy weather	snow	really hot weather		
big cities	mountains	long walks in the country		

I really hate big dogs.

I don't mind spiders.

2 a Complete the gaps with *a*, *the* or – (no word).

1 I haven't got _____ pet.
2 When I was _____ child I had _____ pet.
3 All _____ people in my family are _____ animal lovers.
4 _____ rabbits are popular pets in my country.
5 I learnt to ride _____ horse when I was young.
6 _____ people in my street/area have a lot of pets.
7 I was frightened of _____ dogs when I was _____ small child.
8 _____ teacher (of this class) loves _____ animals.
9 I'm allergic to _____ cats.

b Which sentences are true for you? Correct the ones that are wrong.

I wasn't frightened of dogs when I was a small child.

Pronunciation

1 T11.5 Listen to the two different pronunciations of *the*.

/ðə/	/ði/
1 the sun	2 the earth

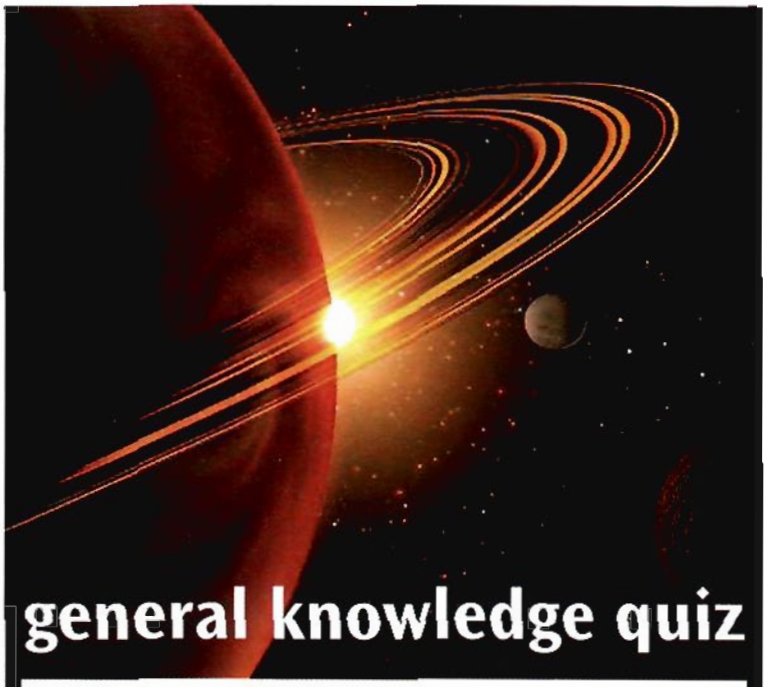
2 T11.6 Here are some more words often found with *the*. Listen to the pronunciation of *the* and write 1 or 2 next to them.

a the east	the west
b the left	the right
c the beginning	the end
d the morning	the afternoon
e the president	the prime minister
f the king	the queen
g the EU	the USA
h the Arctic	the Antarctic

Look at the examples with pronunciation 2. What kind of sound follows *the*?

3 Listen again and repeat. Pay attention to the pronunciation of *the*.

Task: Devise a general knowledge quiz



general knowledge quiz

1 _____ planets are there in our solar system?
a seven b eight c nine

2 _____ is Chow Mein?
a a Chinese food b a Chinese city c a Chinese game

3 _____ litres of blood are there in the average human body?
a 3 to 4 litres b 5 to 6 litres c 10 to 12 litres

4 _____ is it from the earth to the sun?
a 15 million kilometres b 150 million kilometres
c 1.5 billion kilometres

5 _____ is the Islamic holy city of Mecca?
a Egypt b Iran c Saudi Arabia

6 _____ did France win the world cup in football?
a 1966 b 1998 c 1966 and 1998

7 _____ kilometres are there in one mile?
a 0.6 b 1.3 c 1.6

8 _____ was the American politician and actor Arnold Schwarzenegger born?
a Austria b Germany c The Czech Republic

9 _____ official languages does Switzerland have?
a two b three c four

Preparation: listening

1 MD Complete the general knowledge quiz with question words.

2 T11.7 Work in groups. Answer the questions. Then listen and check.

Task: writing and speaking

1 a Work in three teams: A, B and C. You are going to invent your own general knowledge quiz, using the categories in the box.

geography	history	nature	science
sport	food and drink	famous people	
music	art	literature	numbers	other

b Write at least eight questions, giving three possible answers for each. (You can use the 'fantastic facts' at the back of the book for ideas. Team A: Look at page 144. Team B: Look at page 142. Team C: Look at page 141.)

▶ Useful language a

2 Practise saying your questions clearly, so that the other teams can understand.

3 Play your quiz game in teams. Which team won?

▶ Useful language b

Useful language

a Asking questions

When did (Italy) win the European cup?
Where was (Albert Einstein) born?
What's the capital of (Canada)?
How far is it from (Berlin) to (Warsaw)?
Where does (sushi) come from?
Who wrote (*War and Peace*)?

b Answering questions

It's definitely (a).
I think it's (French).
I'm not sure but I think it was ...
I've got no idea.

STUDY...

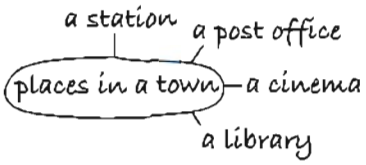
Recording new vocabulary

1 It's a good idea to have a vocabulary notebook. You can record new vocabulary in different ways:

a a picture: *a scarf*

b a translation: *a butcher's = carnicería*

c a diagram:



2 Find three different groups of vocabulary.

potato	eye	walk	fly	nose
jump	run	carrot	climb	head
bean	mouth	mushroom	walk	

3 Use three pages in your notebook and record each group in a different way. Which way do you think is best?

Pronunciation spot

The sounds /w/ and /h/

a T11.8 **Listen and notice the sounds /w/ and /h/. Listen again and practise the words.**

/w/ when, where, what, which, why

/h/ how, how often, who, how much

b T11.9 **Listen and practise words and phrases with /w/.**

c T11.10 **Listen and practise words and phrases with /h/.**

PRACTISE...

1 Animals and natural features ☐

Circle the odd one out.

a a fish / (a kangaroo) / a dolphin

b a mountain / a river / a lake

c an insect / an ant / an elephant

d the earth / a volcano / the moon

e a donkey / a cheetah / a snail

f a parrot / a chimpanzee / a bird

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, page 96.**

2 *can* for ability ☐

Put the words in the correct order.

a speak / you / Japanese? / Can *Can you speak Japanese?*

b can't / drive / You

c very well / can / She / cook

d you / They / understand / can't

e but / music / I / can't read / can / sing / I

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 156.**

3 Question words ☐

Write a different question word (or words) in each gap.

a *Where* were you born?

b _____ do you like best, coffee or tea?

c _____ cousins have you got?

d _____ do you go to the hairdresser's?

e _____ is the station from here?

f _____ does it take you to come to school?

g _____ sugar do you take in your coffee?

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 157.**

4 Saying quantities and big numbers ☐

Write the numbers.

a 250,000 *two hundred and fifty thousand*

b 20,000,000 _____

c 40 kph _____

d 99.9 _____

e 12m 30cm _____

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 99.**

5 Articles ☐

Complete the conversations with *a/an*, *the* or – (no word).

VIC: We had (a) *a* great holiday. We stayed in (b) _____ brilliant hotel.

ROB: Yeah? What kind of things did you do?

VIC: Well, (c) _____ hotel had (d) _____ swimming pool and (e) _____ children loved it so we just relaxed there most days.

ZOE: Jo! There's (f) _____ spider in (g) _____ bath!

JO: I can't help you. I hate (h) _____ spiders!

▶ **Need to check? Language focus C, page 157.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 162 to check what you know!

MODULE 12

A weekend away

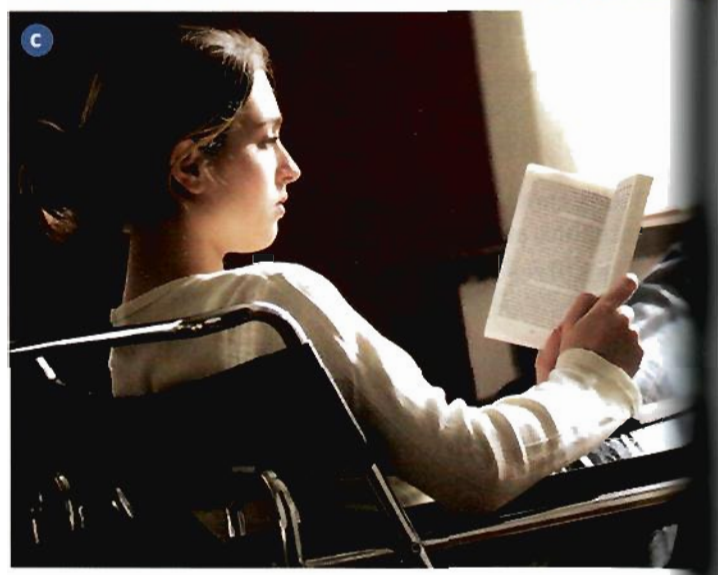
- Future intentions: *going to*, *would like to* and *want to*
- Suggestions and offers
- Vocabulary and speaking: Going out and staying in
- Task: Plan a weekend away
- Real life: Talk about the weather

Language focus 1

Future intentions: *going to*, *would like to* and *want to*

1 MD Look at the photos. In which can you see people who are ...

- at a wedding?
- at the hairdresser's?
- at a swimming pool?
- dancing in a club?
- relaxing at home?
- having a barbecue?
- going for a walk?
- having a family meal?



2 a T12.1 Listen to six people talking about their plans for the weekend and complete the table.

Name	plans for Saturday	plans for Sunday
Neela	Saturday night: - club with friends	
Phil		
Megan		
Jamie		
Anna		
Sharif		

b T12.2 Listen and complete the sentences.

1 On Saturday night I'm going out with a _____ _____ of friends.
2 On Sunday I'm going to _____ _____ with my grandparents.
3 The whole family are going to _____ there because it's my grandmother's _____ .
4 I'm not going to _____ _____ this weekend.
5 I want to _____ the _____ I'm reading.
6 It's my boyfriend's birthday and I want to _____ him a digital _____ .
7 I'd like to go away somewhere _____ _____ .
8 On Sunday afternoon I'm going to a _____ _____ .
9 This weekend? Nothing special. On Saturday afternoon I want to _____ the _____ .

Grammar

1 a **To talk about future intentions, we often use *be* + *going to* + verb.**

⊕ ***I'm going to have*** *lunch with my grandparents.*

⊖ ***I'm not going to do*** *much this weekend.*

? ***Are you going to watch*** *the football tonight?*

b **With the verb *go* we usually use *be* + *going* ~~*to go*~~.**

I'm going out with a group of friends.

2 **We can use other verbs to talk about future intentions, too.**

a ***want to*** + verb
I want to finish my book.
b ***would like to*** + verb
I'd like to do something with the children.

▶ Read Language summaries A and B on pages 157 and 158.

Practice

1 Write sentences about the people in exercise 2a using *going to*.

On Saturday Phil's going to stay at home and relax.

2 What are the people in the pictures going to do?

3 T12.3 Complete the questions with *are*, *do* or *would*. Then listen and check.

a Are you going straight home after this lesson? If not, where _____ you going?
b _____ you going to do any homework tonight? What _____ you going to do?
c _____ you want to watch TV this evening? _____ you want to watch anything special?
d _____ you going to have a busy weekend? What _____ you like to do?
e _____ you going out anywhere this week? If so, where _____ you going?
f Are there any films that you _____ like to see at the moment? Which ones?
g _____ you want to buy anything special in the next few weeks? What?
h _____ you want to go on holiday this year? Where _____ you like to go?

Pronunciation

1 T12.4 Listen and notice that *to* has a weak pronunciation in the middle of a sentence.

Are you going /tə/ to have a busy weekend?
What do you want /tə/ to do?

2 Listen to recording 3 again and repeat.

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 3.

Vocabulary and speaking

Going out and staying in

1 What did you do last weekend? Was it busy or quiet? tiring or relaxing? boring or fun?

> My weekend was really boring. I stayed at home and did nothing!

2 MD Read the questionnaire about the weekend. Mark the activities 1–4.

1 = I **never** do this
2 = I **occasionally** do this
3 = I **sometimes** / **quite often** do this
4 = I **usually** / **always** do this

3 Compare your answers in small groups. Explain what you do and why.

> I often study at the weekend, because I don't have time in the week. How about you?

4 a Match the words and phrases that go together in A and B. Use the questionnaire to check.

	A	B
1	stay	a walk
2	stay	for the weekend
3	do	at home
4	have a	swimming
5	go	the country
6	go to	the gym
7	go to	with friends
8	go for	in bed
9	go out	the housework
10	go away	party

b Spend a few minutes remembering the phrases. Then test your partner.

> the country

> go to the country

5 What's your idea of a perfect weekend? Which of the activities above does it include?

How do you spend weekends?

A Work and rest

At the weekend, do you ever:

- work or study?
- do the housework or the shopping?
- stay in bed until lunchtime?
- stay at home and just relax?

B Sport and exercise

How often do you:

- go to the gym or go swimming?
- go for a long walk?
- play football or another game?
- watch sport on TV?

C Social life

How often do you:

- go out for a meal?
- see relatives?
- have a party or a barbecue at your house?
- go out with a group of friends to a bar or a club?

D Culture

Do you ever:

- go to a concert?
- go to an exhibition or a museum?
- go to the cinema or the theatre?
- read a book?

E Going away for the weekend

Do you ever:

- go away on business for the weekend?
- visit relatives in another part of the country?
- go to the country or to the beach?
- spend the weekend in another city?

Language focus 2

Suggestions and offers

1 T12.5 It's Lisa's birthday on Saturday. Listen to her conversation with Amy without reading. What do they decide to do?

2 Write the numbers of the missing lines in the gaps. Then listen again and check.

1 How about that new French restaurant
2 I'll speak to Martin and the others
3 Let's book it for eight
4 Where shall we go
5 why don't we all go out for a meal somewhere
6 shall I phone the restaurant and book a table

A: It's your birthday next Saturday, isn't it?
L: Yeah, but I don't really know what I want to do. Maybe I'll stay at home and have a quiet night in.
A: Don't be silly, you can't do that! I know, (a) 5 ... you, me, Martin, Ben and some of the others maybe?
L: Yeah, okay. That sounds more fun!
A: (b) ____ ?
L: There's Bagatti's but we always go there. (c) ____ ? I can't remember its name ...
A: The French Table?
L: Let's go there. I'd really like to try it.
A: Yeah, it sounds good. (d) ____ and check that they can come. Then (e) ____ ?
L: Yes, please, if that's okay.
A: What time? Eight, half eight?
L: (f) ____ , and then we can go somewhere else later.
A: Yes, good idea!

3 Work in pairs. Look at the tapescript on page 173 and practise the dialogue.

Grammar

1 a **We make suggestions like this:**
Why don't we all go out for a meal?
How about (trying) that new French restaurant?
Shall I phone and book a table?
Let's book it for eight o'clock.

b **How does the other person in the conversation answer?**

2 a **We make offers like this:**
I'll speak to Martin and the others.
Shall I phone and book a table?

b **How does the other person answer?**

▶ Read Language summaries C and D on page 158.

Practice

1 a Put the words in the correct order to make suggestions and offers.

1 coffee / a / about / How?
2 jacket / take / I / your / Shall?
3 the bill / ask / we / Shall / for?
4 home / you / I'll / take
5 go / we / Why / don't / cinema / the / to?
6 another / Let's / drink / have
7 you / tomorrow / call / I / Shall?
8 we / Why / meet / the station / don't / at?
9 the tickets / book / I'll

b T12.6 Listen and check. How did the other person answer? Did they accept the offer/suggestion?

Pronunciation

Look at Recording 6 on page 173. Listen again and practise. Pay attention to the polite intonation.

2 Which suggestions/offers in exercise 1 might you make in these situations?

a You are arranging a night out at the cinema.
b A friend is spending the evening at your house.
c You meet an old friend in the street.
d You are in a restaurant with a friend.

3 Work with a partner. Write a dialogue for one of the situations in exercise 2. Act it out in front of the class.

Task: Plan a weekend away

Preparation: reading and listening

1 MD Check the meaning of the words in bold. Which of the things in the box can you see in the photos?

a **magnificent cathedral**	a **castle**
beautiful views	**sailing**
cliffs and beaches	**B&Bs**
traditional live music	a **golf course**
a **lake with an island**	a **lively bar**

2 Read the descriptions of three places and answer the questions.

a Which photos go with each place?
b Which of the things in exercise 1 can you find in each place?
c Which would you most like to visit?

3 T12.7 Three friends are planning a weekend away. Listen and circle the correct information.

a They decide to go to ...
(1) the Isle of Wight.
(2) Canterbury and Leeds Castle.
(3) Dublin.

b ... because ...
(1) it's not too far.
(2) it's really beautiful.
(3) there's something for everyone.

c They are going to travel by ...
(1) ferry. (2) train. (3) plane.

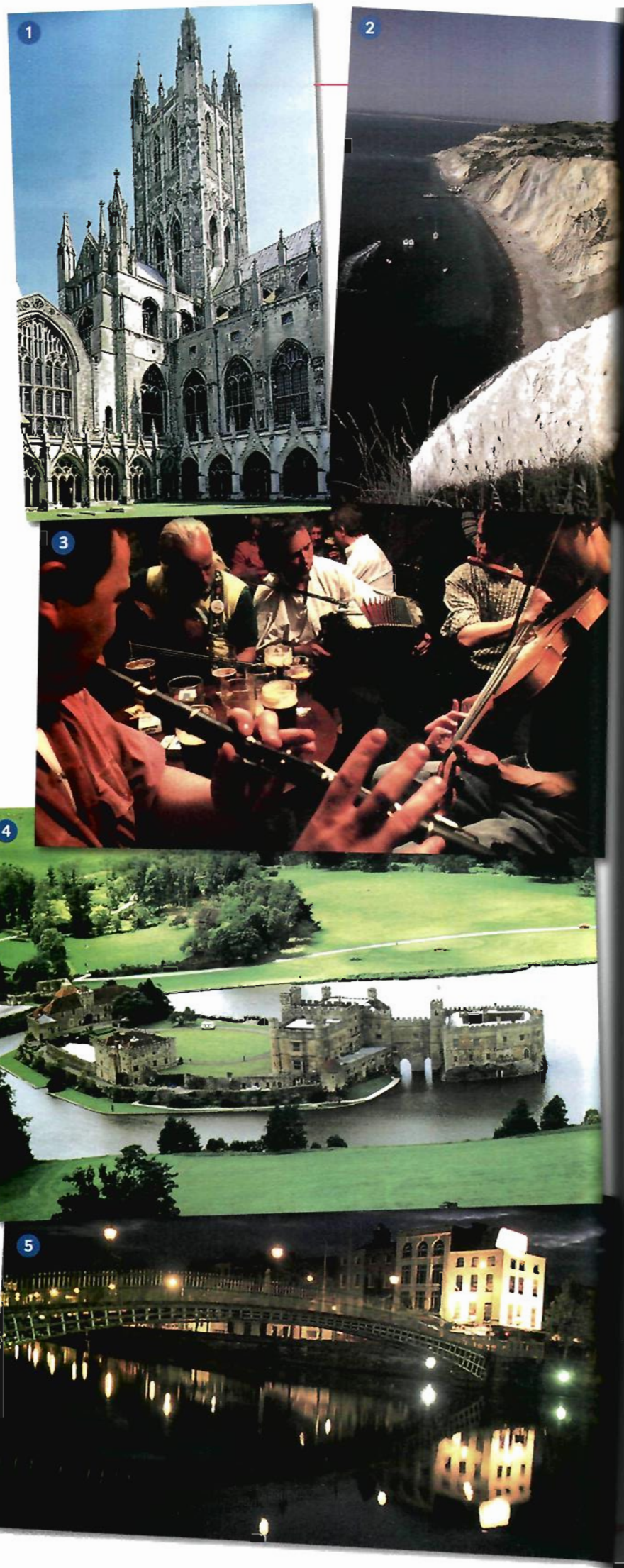
d All of them like ...
(1) cities.
(2) walking.
(3) going out in the evening.

e On Friday evening they are going to leave at ...
(1) 6.00. (2) 8.00. (3) 10.00.

f They are going to come back on Sunday evening at ...
(1) 6.00. (2) 8.00. (3) 10.00

g They are going to stay in ...
(1) a college. (2) a B&B. (3) a hotel.

4 T12.8 Look at the tapescript on page 173. Listen and practise the sentences.



The Isle of Wight

Just two and a half hours' journey from London, the Isle of Wight is perfect for a weekend break, with its three hundred and eighty square kilometres of farmland, cliffs and beaches. You can stay in a B&B at Freshwater Bay and go for long walks along the cliff paths, and beaches. Or hire a bicycle and ride around the island, stopping at Carisbrooke Castle with its magnificent views over the island. If you want something more exciting, try a one-day paragliding course or go sailing: the Isle of Wight is a paradise for sailors. For children, there is a steam railway which starts from Ryde on the north coast. In the evenings you can relax after a good day's walking in one of the many excellent fish restaurants.

Canterbury and Leeds Castle

With its magnificent cathedral, many museums and old city walls, Canterbury is one of the most historic and beautiful cities in the country. You can stay at a hotel or a B&B and spend your day visiting the nine hundred-year-old cathedral and shopping. Or visit nearby Leeds Castle, which is situated on two islands in the middle of a small lake and is one of the loveliest castles in the country. It was first built in the ninth century and later became the home of King Henry VIII. Today it is a favourite with visitors, with beautiful parks to walk in, as well as gardens, a golf course, a museum, and, in summer, outdoor concerts.

Dublin

Dublin, the capital city of the Republic of Ireland, is situated on the east coast, on the River Liffey, and has an international airport with cheap, frequent flights from London. It's a lively and cosmopolitan city, and if you walk along the famous O'Connell Street you will find exciting shops, bars and restaurants. If you like sightseeing, you can also visit the famous Dublin Castle, Trinity College and Phoenix Park, one of the largest city parks in the world. In the evening you can listen to traditional Irish music in the bars and you can try the most popular drink in Ireland: Guinness, a black beer. Close by the city there are lovely beaches, and just over an hour away are the Wicklow Mountains for walks and beautiful views. And you will have no problems finding good accommodation: Dublin is famous for its excellent B&Bs.

Task: speaking

1 You are going to plan a weekend away with some other students. Make a list of possible places to visit.

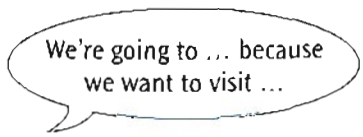
2 a Work in groups and decide where you would like to go. Think about the following things.

- how to travel
- where to stay
- what to do there
- when to leave / get home

▶ Useful language

b Plan how you will describe your weekend away to other students. Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

3 a Work in new groups. Tell the group what you have planned.



b Which weekend away sounds the most interesting?

Useful language

Where to go

I'd really like to go to ...

It's a long way / not too far.

It takes about two hours to get there.

How to travel

We can fly.

What time shall we leave?

What time do we want to get home?

What to do

What can we do there?

Let's visit the museum.

I'd like to ...

Where to stay

Where shall we stay?

I'll book a B&B.

Real life

Talk about the weather

1 How many seasons are there in your country? Which seasons are January, April, July and October in?

2 a Match the phrases and pictures.

It's cloudy.	It's sunny.	It's windy.
It's snowing.	It's raining.	It's cold.
It's foggy.	It's hot.	It's wet.
It's warm.	It's cool.	It's icy.

b T12.9 Listen and check, then repeat.

WEATHER FACT FILE

The hottest place in the world is El Azizia in Libya. In 1922 it had the highest temperature ever – 58°C.

Chicago in the north of the United States is called 'the Windy City'. Florida in the south is known as 'the Sunny State'.

It never snows in Brazil.

The wettest place in the world is Mawsynram in India, which has around 1.2 m of rain every year!

On July 21st 1983 Vostok in Antarctica had a temperature of -89°C, the coldest temperature ever recorded.

Countries near the Equator, like Malaysia and the Philippines, have only two seasons a year, the wet season and the dry season.

3 MD Read the fact file. Why are these places mentioned?

Brazil Chicago El Azizia Malaysia Mawsynram Vostok

4 a T12.10 Listen to Sumalee from Bangkok in Thailand and Cathy from Vancouver in Canada talking about the weather in their countries. Which of these statements are true?

Thailand

1 Thailand has three seasons.
2 The cool season is in April and May.
3 The rainy season is from June to October.
4 When it rains, it usually lasts for about four hours.
5 Bangkok gets very hot in April.
6 The coldest days are in December.

Canada

1 In the north of Canada, there's snow for around eight months of the year.
2 The winters in Vancouver are very bad.
3 It's often cloudy and wet in Vancouver in the winter, but it isn't very cold.
4 The summers in Vancouver aren't very sunny and warm.

b Listen again and correct the statements that are false.

5 *Either* Write a paragraph about the weather in your country.

In ... there are ... seasons. From ... to ... it's ... . From ... to ... it's ...
The average temperature in my city is about ...
It's very ... in (winter) and ... in (summer).

Or Tell other students about the weather in your country.

STUDY...

Remembering collocations

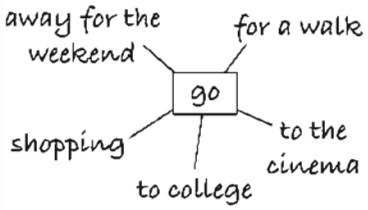
1 Collocations are words that go together, for example:

stay at home have breakfast
do my homework

2 It's important to record collocations. You can write them like this and then cover one column and test yourself ...

go out	with friends
see	a film
miss	my family

... or you can make a diagram.



3 Can you remember verbs which go with each of these nouns?

a watch television
b _____ economics
c _____ computer games
d _____ nothing
e _____ the radio
f _____ a new job
g _____ school
h _____ by underground
i _____ a parcel
j _____ a motorbike
k _____ to the airport
l _____ married

Pronunciation spot

Short forms

a T12.11 **Listen and notice the short forms.**

I'll help you.
I'd like a coffee.
Let's go out somewhere.

b T12.12 **Listen and write down the number of words you hear. (*I'll* = 2 words.)**

c Listen again and write the sentences. Then practise them.

PRACTISE...

1 Future intentions ☐

Put the words in the box in the correct place in the sentences.

to	do	'd	would	's	are	'm

a Lena 's going to study law.
b What you want to do tonight?
c What you like for your birthday?
d Miko wants visit us next month.
e I like to go for a long walk tomorrow.
f Where you going on holiday?
g I going out for a meal.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 157.**

2 Going out and staying in ☐

Cross out the noun that doesn't go with each verb.

a play	football / a game / sport
b do	a party / the shopping / the housework
c stay	at home / relatives / in bed
d have	a barbecue / a meal / the gym
e go	school / to an exhibition / swimming

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, page 106.**

3 Suggestions and offers ☐

Put the words in the conversation in the correct order.

A: (a) we / for / don't / go / a / Why / walk ?
Why don't we go for a walk?
B: (b) idea / Good
(c) we / shall / go / Where?
A: (d) beach / about / How / the ?
B: (e) ring / Steve / shall / OK, / I?
(f) he / to / Maybe / like / come / 'd
A: (g) and / 's / Yeah / some / take / let / food
B: (h) make / Right, / sandwiches / 'll / some / I

▶ **Need to check? Language summaries C and D, page 158.**

4 The weather ☐

Write the missing letters to make weather words.

a s_n__	c r__n__g	e c__l	g w__m
b f_g_y	d s n___n_	f c l____	h w__d_

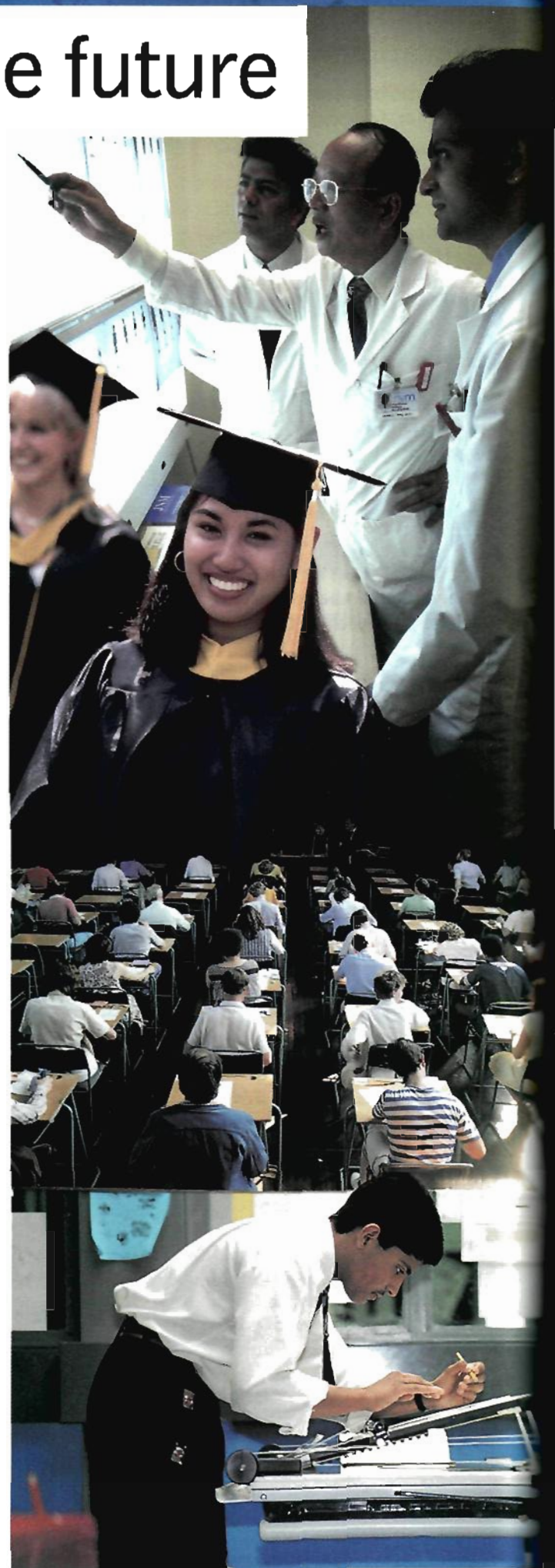
▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 110.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 163 to check what you know!

MODULE 13

Learning for the future



- Infinitive of purpose
- *might* and *will*
- Vocabulary and speaking: Education and careers
- Listening: My career
- Reading: *Easy English?*
- Task: Find the right course
- Real life: Applying for a course

Vocabulary and speaking

Education and careers

1 a MD Which of these subjects do/did you study at school or university? Can you add any other subjects to the list?

politics	management	science
history	literature	business studies
languages	economics	law
design	medicine	information technology
geography	maths	engineering

b Which of the subjects interest you most/least?

I'm not very interested in history.

Pronunciation

1 T13.1 Listen and notice the pronunciation of the subjects. Which letters are silent?

2 Listen again and mark the stress. Then practise the words.

2 MD Put the phrases in the three categories below. (Some can go in more than one column.)

do a (business studies) course	pass/fail an exam
choose a career	get a degree
go to primary/secondary school	take an exam
have an interview	get into university
apply for a job/a course	train to be (a chef)
earn money	be unemployed

school	university	work
take an exam		

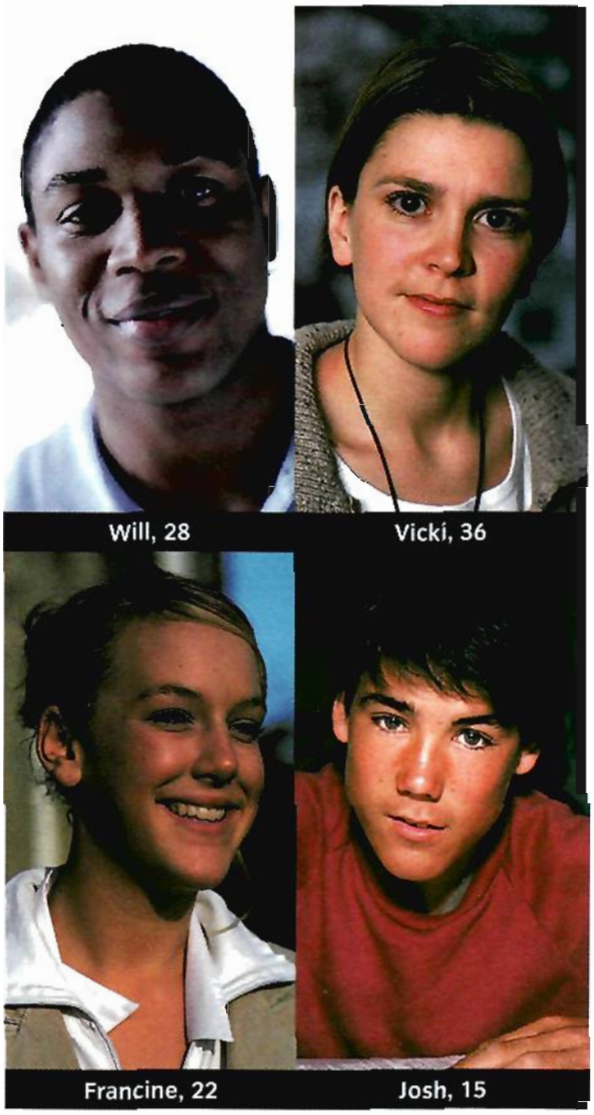
3 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

a When did you start primary school? When did you go to secondary school? Which did/do you like best? Why?
b What were/are your best subjects at school? Which were/are your worst?
c Are you doing any courses at the moment (apart from this one)?
d Is there anything that you would really like to study?
e Are you taking any exams this year? Do you think you will pass or fail? Why?
f Is it difficult to get into university and get a degree in your country? Which courses are the most difficult to get on?
g What other kinds of training do people do? Where do they do this?
h What are the good/bad things about the education system in your country, do you think?
i Is it important to learn foreign languages in your country? Which languages do most people learn? At what age do they start?
j Is it easy or difficult to get a job at the moment? Are many people unemployed?
k Which careers are most popular with young people? Why are they popular, do you think?
l If you apply for a job in your country, do you normally have an interview? What happens?
m Which careers are most popular with men/women?
n Which professions earn the most money? Is money important to you in choosing a career?
o What else do you look for in a career? Do you have an 'ideal job'?

Listening

My career

1 T13.2 Listen to four people talking about their careers. Which subjects and jobs did each person mention?



2 a Work in pairs. Who ...

1 failed all his exams at school?
2 learnt French at primary school?
3 worked for a big finance company?
4 wants to do a career that is very difficult to get into?
5 is going to Lisbon soon?
6 stopped work for a few years?
7 worked as a van driver?
8 owns his own company now?
9 writes for his school magazine?
10 is training to be a teacher?

b Listen again and check.

Language focus 1

Infinitive of purpose

Match the two parts of the sentences. Which people in the photos on page 113 do they describe?

1	He went back to college	to study Portuguese.
2	She stopped work	to get some qualifications.
3	He's writing for his school magazine	to look after her children.
4	She's going to Lisbon	to get some experience.

Grammar

We often use an infinitive (*to* + verb) to say why we do things.

She's going to Lisbon to study Portuguese.

Underline the other examples like this in the exercise above.

▶ Read Language summary A on page 158.

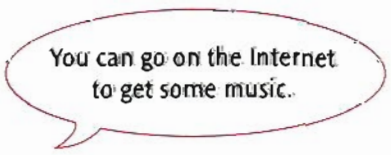
Practice

1 Finish the sentences in as many ways as you can, using the ideas in the box.

check my e-mails	find some information	get a book
pass his exams	study French	train as a nurse
meet some friends	do some studying	check something
look up a word	buy a train ticket	do some shopping

a I went on the Internet ... to check my e-mails. / to find some information. / to buy a train ticket. / to do some shopping.
b She went to the library ...
c I'm going upstairs ...
d He went to Paris ...
e Can I borrow your dictionary ...
f She's going back to college ...
g I'm going into town ...
h He worked very hard ...
i He went to the station ...
j Can you lend me some money ...
k I need some time ...
l I'm phoning the office ...

2 Work in pairs. Can you think of any other ideas?



Reading

1 Discuss these questions.

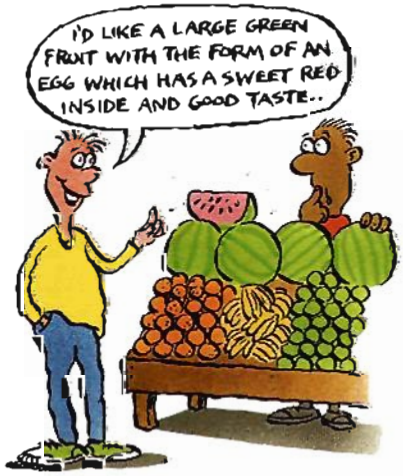
a Which foreign languages do most people learn in your country?
b Do you think English is an easy language to learn or not?
c Which of these areas of the language are easiest/hardest for foreign students do you think: grammar, pronunciation, spelling or vocabulary? Why?
d Is your language easy for foreigners to learn? Why / Why not?

2 MD Read the text. Which paragraph:

a is about a man who invented a new form of English with a smaller vocabulary?
b is about a man who tried to change the spelling of English?
c introduces the topic?
d is about how e-mail is changing English?
e is about a form of English that people use at sea?

3 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

a When did Professor Ogden invent Basic English? How many words did it have?
b Why did Professor Zachrisson invent Anglic? What happened to it?
c Why is Seaspeak easier than ordinary English?
d What is 'Internetish', do you think?
e Is it a good idea to learn Anglic or Seaspeak instead of English?
f How would you change English to make it easier?



Easy English?

1 English is an important global language, but that doesn't mean it's easy to learn. Many experts have tried to make English easier for students to learn – but they weren't always successful.

2 In 1930, Professor CK Ogden of Cambridge University invented Basic English. It had only 850 words (and just eighteen verbs) and Ogden said most people could learn it in just thirty hours. The problem was that people who learned Basic English could write and say simple messages, but they couldn't understand the answers in 'real' English! It was also impossible to explain a word if it wasn't in the Basic English word list. For example, if you wanted a water melon, you asked for 'a large green fruit with the form of an egg, which has a sweet red inside and a good taste'!

3 RE Zachrisson, a university professor in Sweden, decided that the biggest problem for learners of English was spelling, so he invented a language called Anglic. Anglic was similar to English, but with much simpler spelling. 'Father' became 'faadher, 'new' became 'nue' and 'years' became 'yeerz'. Unfortunately for some students of English, Anglic never became popular.

4 Even easier is the language which ships' captains use: it's called 'Seaspeak'. Seaspeak uses a few simple phrases for every possible situation. In Seaspeak, for example you don't say, 'I'm sorry what did you say?' or 'I didn't understand, can you repeat that?' ... it's just, 'Say again.' No more grammar!

5 In the age of international communication through the Internet who knows? ... a new form of English might appear. A large number of the world's e-mails are in English and include examples of 'NetLingo' like OIC (Oh, I see) and TTYL (Talk to you later). In another fifty years, English as we know it might not exist ... we will probably all speak fluent Internetish!

Language focus 2

might and *will*

Read the statements. Do you agree? Compare answers with a partner.

1 People **won't** learn Latin any more in a few years.
2 In a few years, everyone **will** speak English.
3 English **might not** be the global language in a hundred years' time – it **might** be Chinese instead.
4 In the next hundred years many smaller languages **will** disappear.

Grammar

1 **Look at the verbs in bold in the sentences above. Which verb(s) means that the speaker:**

a is sure this will happen?
b thinks that maybe this will happen?
c that maybe this will not happen?
d is sure that this will not happen?

2 **Notice these short forms:**

They'll (= will) disappear. *They won't (= will not) disappear.*

▶ Read Language summary B on page 158.

Practice

1 Complete the sentences with *might (not)* or *will*.

a In a few years time everyone _____ know how to use the Internet.
b In the future people _____ go to school or university. They _____ study at home using their computer.
c Tom isn't sure what he wants to do when he leaves school. He _____ go to university, or he _____ travel abroad for a year.
d Why not do a course in Japanese? You never know – you _____ need to speak it one day.
e Denise doesn't like her teacher. She thinks she _____ change her class soon.
f Some teachers are worried that computers _____ take their jobs one day.

2 Complete the sentences for you using the ideas in the box.

career and education	holidays and travel	being rich
marriage and children	speaking English	other things

a Next winter I might ...
b Next summer I think I'll ...
c Next year I hope I'll ...
d In ten years' time I might ...
e I might never ...
f I'll definitely never ...
g One day I hope I'll ...
h When I'm sixty-five I'll probably ...

Pronunciation

1 T13.3 Listen to ten sentences. Write P if they are in the present and F if they are in the future.

2 Listen again and practise the pronunciation of *I'll* and *won't*.

Task: Find the right course

Preparation: reading and speaking

1 MD Read the college brochure and answer the questions.

a Which career(s) does each course train you for?
b Which courses are full-time, which are part-time and which are both? Which courses last for two years?

2 a Three students, Taka, Oliver and Gaby want to choose a course. Work in groups of three.
Student A: Read about Taka on page 141.
Student B: Read about Oliver on page 148.
Student C: Read about Gaby on page 145.

b Tell the group about your student and what they want to study. Listen to your partners and make notes about each student.

Task: speaking

1 a Work individually. Read the brochure again. Decide which courses are suitable for each person.

b Which do you think each person will choose? Why?

2 Work in groups and compare ideas. Try to agree on the best course for each person.

▶ Useful language

3 T13.4 Listen to the three students talking about the course they chose. Did they choose the same one as you?

4 Which of the courses would you like / not like to do? Why?

CHOOSE YOUR COURSE

■ LEISURE AND TOURISM

For people interesting in a career in tourism. Includes:

- marketing and promotion
- customer service
- information technology

This course is one-year, full-time. You must be at least 16 years old.

■ INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

For people who need to use computers to work in business or industry. Includes:

- using information technology for business purposes
- programming and software

This is a six-month part-time course (various days) or a one-year full-time course, twenty hours a week.

■ CHILDCARE

For people interested in working with pre-school children in nurseries or in private home. Includes:

- child development
- health and safety
- career options

This is a one-year full-time course, 18 hours a week, or a two-year part-time course (Monday, Tuesday Thursday 6.30–9.30 pm).

■ SPORTS STUDIES

For people who would like to work in sports centres, swimming pools, etc. Includes:

- health and safety
- sports coaching
- fitness and diet

This is a two-year full-time course open to people over 16 years of age, or a four-year part-time evening course (Monday, Tuesday Thursday 6.30–9.30 pm).

■ PERFORMING ARTS

Includes music, dance and drama in the first year. In the second year students can choose special subjects such as:

- singing
- directing
- marketing

Students must be at least 16 at the time of entry. The course is two years, full-time.

■ FASHION DESIGN

A course to help you find work in fashion and the media. Includes:

- clothes design
- using computer software
- photography

This is a one-year full-time course (15 hours a week) open to people over 16 years, or a two-year part-time course (Monday and Wednesday 9.00 am–4.00 pm).

Useful language

Explaining your ideas

I think the best course for (Gaby) is ...

(Oliver) will/might choose ... because he likes ...

(Taka) might enjoy the ... course.

Agreeing and disagreeing

Yes, you're right.

I agree with you.

I don't agree because ...

Yes, but ...

Real life
Applying for a course

Adriana is Italian. She wants to improve her English to get a better job.

1 Read about Adriana. Match her details below with the questions in section A of the application form. (Write n/a 'not applicable' for no information.)

Personal details

farinelli@bellquel.lat.it

n/a | Ms

no visa | Farinelli

Adriana Paola

20-11-87 | n/a

Via Ezio 60, 04300 Latina, Italy

7-53-58-285

female

Same as daytime number

02426439

Italian

2 Invent details for section B.

APPLICATION FORM — **W.E.M.C.O.T.** (West Midland College of Technology)

English as a Foreign Language

Please complete this form using BLOCK LETTERS.

Section A Personal Details

1 Title: (Mr / Mrs / Miss / Ms / Dr, etc.)
2 Surname: .....
3 First Name(s): .....
4 Date of Birth: Day ..... Month ..... Year .....
5 Sex: Male ☐ Female ☐
6 Nationality: .....
7 Home Address: .....
8 Telephone No: a) Day: ..... b) Evening: .....
9 Fax number: .....
10 E-mail address: .....
11 Passport No: .....
12 a) Have you got a student/tourist visa? .....
b) Date of expiry: .....

Section B Course Details

1 Start Date: .....
2 for ..... Terms (Maximum 4)
Term 1 ☐ Term 2 ☐ Term 3 ☐ Term 4 ☐
Jan – March April – June July – Sep Oct – Dec
3 Why do you want to study English at WEMCOT?
.....
.....
4 What level do you think your English is?
Elementary ☐ Lower Intermediate ☐ Intermediate ☐
Higher Intermediate ☐ Advanced ☐ Proficiency ☐

You will have a test on the first day of the course.

Signed: .....
Date: .....

3 Adriana goes to register for the course. The college administrator checks all her details with her. Work in pairs and act out the interview.
Student A: You are Adriana. Answer the questions about yourself.
Student B: You are the college administrator. Ask questions to check the information on the form.

4 Act out the same interview with another student. This time give your own details. First complete the application form on page 147.

STUDY...

English outside the classroom

1 To improve your English outside the classroom, it is important that you do things that you find interesting! Read the ideas below. Can you think of any others?

- Find an English penfriend on the Internet or through a magazine.
- Read about the news on the Internet or in the newspaper.
- Read sports reports in English on the Internet or in a newspaper.
- Find a library or bookshop with 'graded readers' of well-known stories in English.
- Find the words of some of your favourite English songs on the Internet.

2 Mark each idea like this:

✔✔ if you would definitely like to try them.
✔ if you think you would enjoy this.
? if you are not sure.
✘ if you definitely wouldn't enjoy this.

Compare opinions with other students.

3 Choose one idea to try for a few weeks.

4 After a few weeks tell the class how you got on.

Pronunciation spot

The sounds /ɒ/, /əʊ/ and /ɔː/

a T13.5 **Listen. Can you hear the difference between the three 'o' sounds?**

1 /ɒ/	2 /əʊ/	3 /ɔː/
job	won't	sport

b T13.6 **Listen and decide if the words are sound 1, 2 or 3.**

course	college	office
home	go	show
more	short	shop
both	know	perform

Listen again and repeat.

PRACTISE...

1 Subjects you study ☐

Complete the subjects.

a l a w	d e _ o _ _ m _ c s	g m _ d _ c _ _ e
b e _ g _ n _ _ r _ n _	e s _ i _ _ c _	h l _ t _ _ a t _ r e
c d _ s _ _ n	f h _ _ t _ r _	i g _ _ g _ a _ h _

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary and speaking, page 112.**

2 Phrases related to study and jobs ☐

Match A and B to make phrases.

A	B
a go	an exam
b go	an exam
c take	an exam
d do	a nurse
e earn	to secondary school
f apply	a computer course
g pass	for a job
h get	to university
i train as	a degree
j fail	money

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary and speaking, page 112.**

3 Infinitive of purpose ☐

Why do you go to these places? Write two reasons for each.

a the airport — to catch a plane, to meet someone
b a pharmacy _____
c the beach _____
d the cinema _____
e a petrol station _____
f a library _____
g a coffee bar _____

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 158.**

4 *will* and *might* ☐

Complete the sentences with *will (not)* and *might (not)* to make them true in your opinion.

a In ten years people _____ live on other planets.
b One day people _____ go on holiday on the moon.
c Flying _____ become cheaper in the future.
d People in the future _____ live in cities under the sea.
e There _____ more wars in the future.
f In twenty years' time, there _____ more traffic than now.
g Our children and grandchildren _____ live until they are over a hundred.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 158.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 163 to check what you know!

MODULE 14

Keeping in touch

- Present perfect
- Time phrases with the Present perfect and Past simple
- Reading: *Getting in touch through the ages*
- Vocabulary: Ways of communicating
- Real life: Telephoning
- Task: Analyse a questionnaire

Reading

1 MD Look at pictures a–c and read the information. When did these events happen? How long did it take for people to receive the news?

2 a Put these ways of communicating in order from the oldest (1) to the newest (7). Compare answers in pairs but do not read the text.

e-mail
the typewriter
text messages
pen and paper
the telephone
the postage stamp
the fax machine

b MD Read the text and check.

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

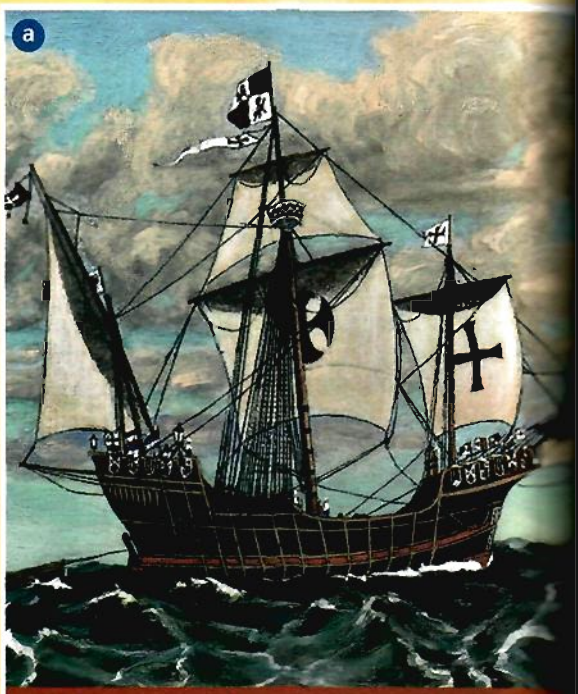
a How did people deliver letters in Ancient Egypt?
b How much did the first stamp cost?
c How often did they deliver letters in the 1840s?
d How are the letters arranged on a modern computer keyboard?
e When did the first fax machine appear?
f Why was it difficult to walk with the first walkie-talkies?
g When was the first text message?
h How many e-mails do we send every day?

4 What do the pronouns in bold refer to?

a **it** cost just one penny (paragraph 2)
b nobody was very interested in **it** (paragraph 4)
c **it** was so enormous that no one wanted **one** (paragraph 4)
d after World War Two **they** became popular with police officers (paragraph 5)

5 Work in small groups. Discuss these questions.

- Which information in the text did you find most surprising?
- Do you think people send too many e-mails / text messages?
- Do you ever receive annoying e-mails / phone calls / letters?

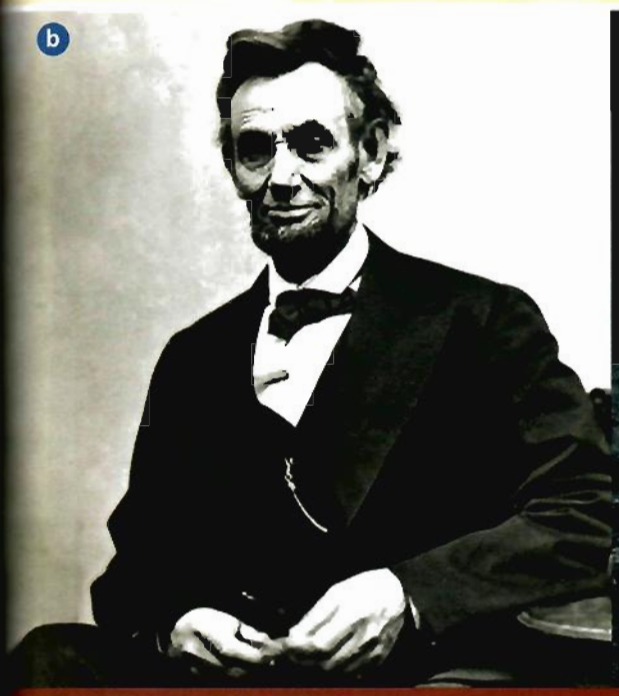


500 years ago, it took five months for the news of Christopher Columbus' arrival in America to reach Queen Isabella in Spain.

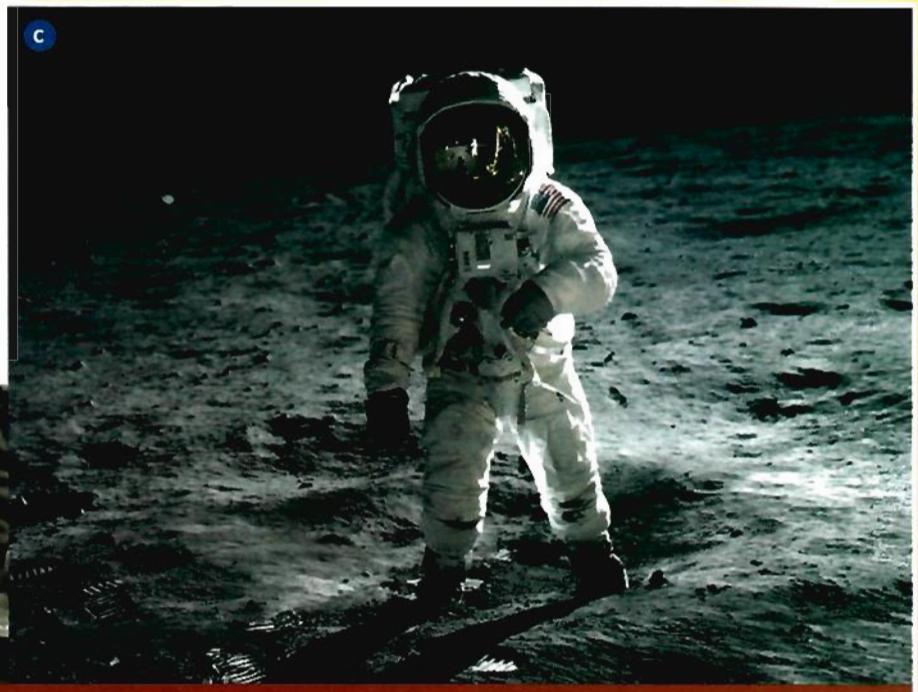
GETTING IN

1 Nobody knows who wrote the first letter or when, but we know that 4,000 years ago in Ancient Egypt people carried letters by hand over hundreds of kilometres. Very few people could write, so there were special people, called scribes, who wrote letters for everyone else.

2 In those days you didn't need a stamp. The first stamp didn't appear until 1840 and it cost just one penny. Nowadays one of these original stamps costs €375. Letter writing was so popular in the 1840s that they delivered the post several times a day



150 years ago, it took two weeks for news of President Lincoln's assassination in the USA to reach Europe.



In 1969, when Neil Armstrong first walked on the moon, it took just 1.3 seconds for his words to reach the Earth!

TOUCH THROUGH THE AGES

3 An American company – Remington and Sons – made the first typewriter in 1871. All the letters in the word 'typewriter' were on the top line of the keyboard so that salesmen could demonstrate the machine more easily. Amazingly, the letters are still in the same place on the modern computer keyboard!

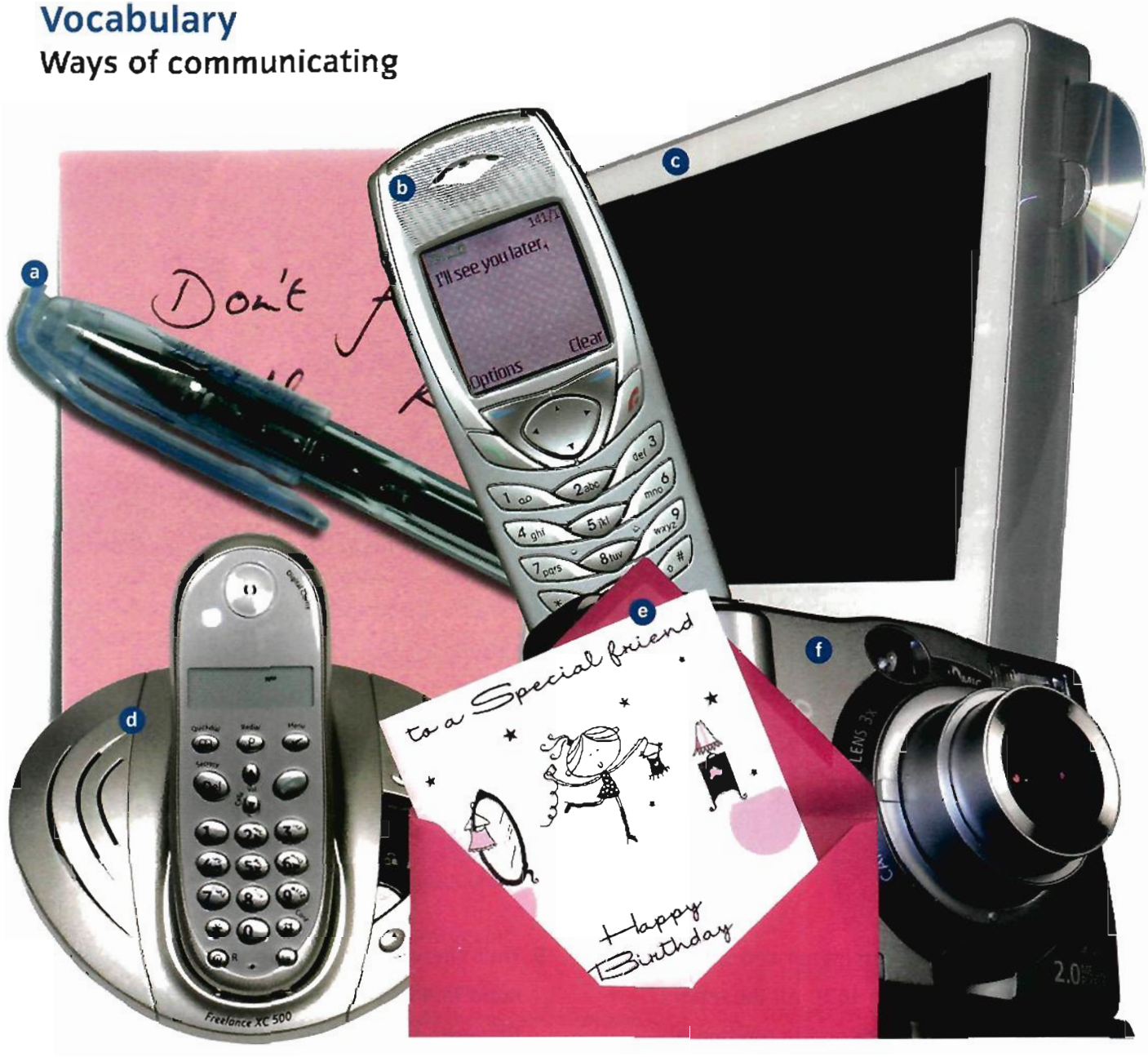
4 In 1876, when Alexander Graham Bell demonstrated a fantastic new invention called the telephone, nobody was very interested in it. The first fax machine appeared at around the same time, but it was so enormous that no one wanted one – in fact fax machines didn't become popular for another hundred years.

5 Then there was the walkie-talkie, a small two-way radio first used by the US army in the 1930s. However, since they weighed around 13.5 kilos, the talking was perhaps easier than the walking! After World War Two they became popular with police officers. Before that they had to use whistles to call for help!

6 Nowadays of course we can send messages and pictures around the world in a few seconds using computers and mobile phones. It's hard to believe that e-mail was only invented in 1971, and the first text message was sent in 1992. Today we send over a billion text messages around the world every single day, and an incredible thirty-six billion e-mails!

Vocabulary

Ways of communicating



1 What can you see in the photos? Which phrases in the box do you associate with each item?

take/send a photo
write a letter
make a phone call
write a note
post a letter/card
send/receive an e-mail
go on the Internet
send a card
send/get a text message
leave a message
check your messages
call someone

2 MD Work in pairs. Complete the sentences in as many ways as you can using the phrases from exercise 1.

a If you need to contact someone urgently, you can ... or ...
b The cheapest way to keep in touch is to ... or ...
c If you need to find some information quickly, you can ...
d If the person you call doesn't answer, you can ...
e 100 years ago if people wanted to communicate with each other, they ...
f If you want to wish someone happy birthday, you can ...
g If you're on holiday and want to contact your friends, you can ...
h If you go out and you want to leave a message for a member of your family, you can ...
i If you want to say thank you for a meal or present, you can ...
j If you're bored and can't think of anything to do, you can ...

Language focus 1

Present perfect

1 T14.1 Listen to five people talking about different forms of communication. Which question below is each person answering?

1 How many phone calls have you made so far today?
2 How many e-mails have you received this week?
3 How many hours have you spent on the Internet this week?
4 How many mobile phones have you owned in your life?
5 How many letters have you written this year?
6 How much TV have you watched this week?
7 How many books have you read this year?
8 How many computers have you owned?

2 T14.2 Listen and complete the sentences.

a I've spent _____ on the Internet so far this week.
b I haven't watched _____ so far this week.
c I've had _____ in my life so far.
d I haven't written _____ so far this year.
e I've read _____ this week so far.

Grammar

1 **We use the Present perfect to describe past actions that are connected to the present. Very often they happen in a time period that is not finished.**

I've sent about ten e-mails (so far today).
I've owned three computers (in my life).
I haven't written any letters (this week).

We do not say exactly when these things happened with the Present perfect – it is not important.

2 **We form the Present perfect with *have/has* + past participle.**

a Regular past participle: verb + *-ed*
I've watched fifteen hours of TV this week.
b Irregular past participles: *made, sent, written, read*
He's read about eight books so far this year.

3 **Complete the table.**

+	I/you/we/they	'_____	sent	an e-mail.
	he/she	'_____		
−	I/you/we/they	haven't	got	any text messages.
	he/she	_____		
?	_____	I/you/we/they	written	a note?
	_____	he/she		

▶ Read language summary A on page 158.

Practice

1 a Write sentences answering the questions in the questionnaire.

I've made two phone calls so far today.

b Compare your sentences in groups.

I haven't made any phone calls so far today. How about you?

2 MD Use your mini-dictionary to find the past participle of the verbs.

a	lose	_____	g	receive	_____
b	forget	_____	h	use	_____
c	phone	_____	i	buy	_____
d	pay	_____	j	take	_____
e	check	_____	k	keep	_____
f	leave	_____	l	have	_____

3 Use the Present perfect to make true sentences for you.

a write a letter in English
b phone the emergency services
c lose your mobile
d forget to post an important letter
e buy a book online
f have a virus on your computer

I've never written a letter in English.
I've written lots of letters in English.

4 Work in pairs. Ask your partner about his/her sentences.

Have you ever written a letter in English?

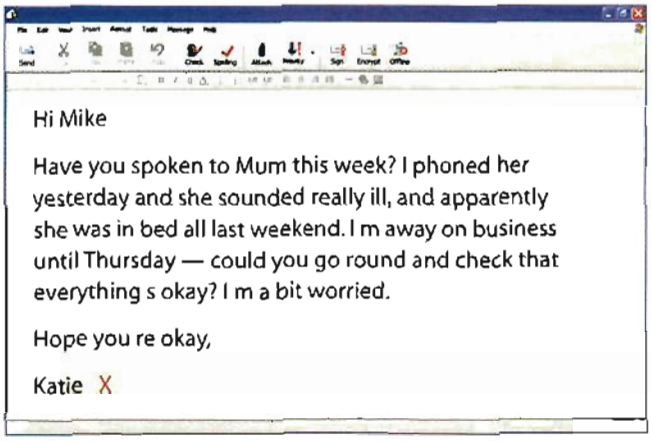
Yes, I have. I've written a few letters in English.

Pronunciation

1 T14.3 Listen and write down the eight sentences you hear.

2 Listen again and underline the stressed syllables.
I've lost my mobile.

3 Practise the sentences. Pay attention to the stressed syllables.

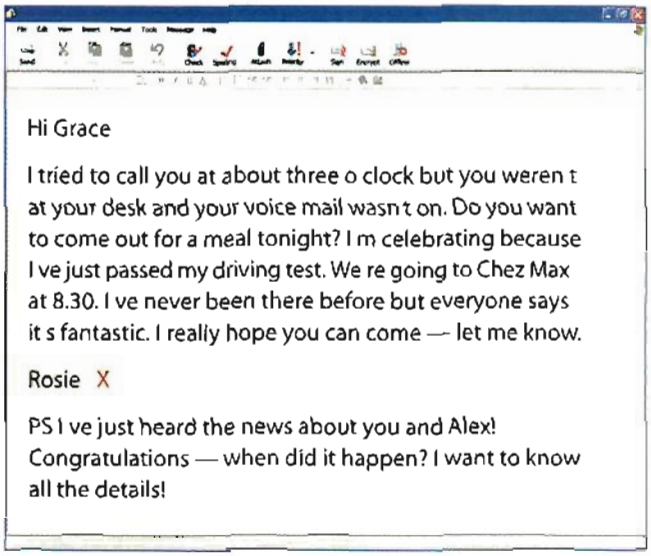


Hi Mike

Have you spoken to Mum this week? I phoned her yesterday and she sounded really ill, and apparently she was in bed all last weekend. I m away on business until Thursday — could you go round and check that everything s okay? I m a bit worried.

Hope you re okay,

Katie X



Hi Grace

I tried to call you at about three o clock but you weren t at your desk and your voice mail wasn t on. Do you want to come out for a meal tonight? I m celebrating because I ve just passed my driving test. We re going to Chez Max at 8.30. I ve never been there before but everyone says it s fantastic. I really hope you can come — let me know.

Rosie X

PS I ve just heard the news about you and Alex! Congratulations — when did it happen? I want to know all the details!

Language focus 2

Time phrases with the Present perfect and Past simple

1 Read the e-mails above. Answer the questions.

a What is the relationship between the two people do you think?
b Why are they sending the e-mail?

2 Underline the Past simple verbs in the e-mails like this ____ and the Present perfect verbs like this ~~~.

Grammar

1 Past simple

a **If we say exactly when an action happened in the past, we cannot use the Present perfect. We use the Past simple.**

I tried to call you at about three o'clock.
I phoned her yesterday.
She was in bed all last weekend.

These words show that the action is finished.

b **We use the Past simple in questions with *When*.**

When did it happen?

2 Present perfect

a **We use the Present perfect with time periods that have not finished.**

Have you spoken to Mum this week?

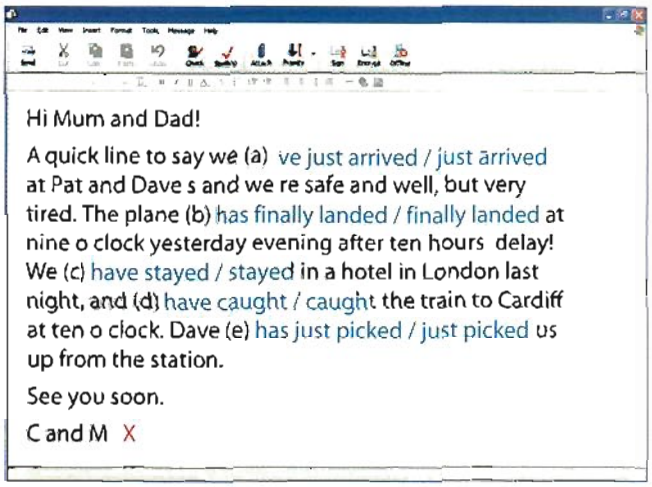
b **If we don't say when something happened, we often use the Present perfect, especially with words like *just*, *recently*, *ever* and *never*.**

I've just passed my driving test.
Have you ever been to Chez Max?
I've never been there before.

▶ Read Language summary B on page 159.

Practice

1 Choose the correct tense in the e-mails below.

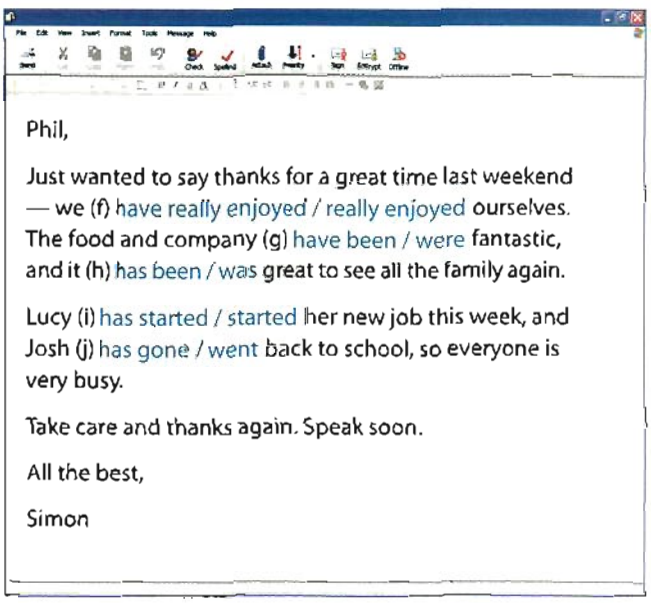


Hi Mum and Dad!

A quick line to say we (a) ve just arrived / just arrived at Pat and Dave s and we re safe and well, but very tired. The plane (b) has finally landed / finally landed at nine o clock yesterday evening after ten hours delay! We (c) have stayed / stayed in a hotel in London last night, and (d) have caught / caught the train to Cardiff at ten o clock. Dave (e) has just picked / just picked us up from the station.

See you soon.

C and M X



Phil,

Just wanted to say thanks for a great time last weekend — we (f) have really enjoyed / really enjoyed ourselves. The food and company (g) have been / were fantastic, and it (h) has been / was great to see all the family again.

Lucy (i) has started / started her new job this week, and Josh (j) has gone / went back to school, so everyone is very busy.

Take care and thanks again. Speak soon.

All the best,

Simon

2 a Put the questions into the correct form, Present perfect or Past simple.

1 you pass your driving test? When / you pass?
2 you / take any other exams recently? When / you take them?
3 you / eat in a restaurant this week? When and where / you go?
4 you / be ill at all this year? When / you ill?
5 you / ever / be in hospital?
6 you / ever / go / on a long flight? When and where / you go?
7 you / go to stay with friends recently? Who / you visit?
8 anyone you know / start a new job recently? When / they start?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

Real life
Telephoning

1 a Jane wants to make four telephone calls. Look at her list. Who is she going to call and why?

To phone
- ☐ Julia at Thompson travel about plane tickets
- ☐ Paul about tomorrow night
- ☐ Dad about Mum's birthday present
- ☐ Tania to tell her about the tickets

b T14.4 Listen and number the calls in the order you hear them.

c Did she speak to everyone on her list? If not, what did she do / is she going to do?

2 Listen again and complete the sentences.

Conversation 1
a Hello, _____ Paul, please?
b Sorry, _____ .
c Do you know when _____ ?
Conversation 2
d Hello, _____ Jane Hancock. _____ the flight tickets.
Conversation 3
e This is Tania Shaw. Sorry _____ .
f Please _____ after the tone.
g Hi, it's Jane here. _____ back?
Conversation 4
h Hello Mum, _____ . Is _____ ?
i Can you _____ ?

Pronunciation

1 T14.5 Listen and repeat, copying the polite intonation.
Hello, can I speak to Paul, please?
Is that Julia?
Can you call me back?
Is Dad there?
Can you ask him to call me?

2 T14.6 Listen and repeat.
Speaking. Sorry, he's not here. Yes, of course.

3 Complete the telephone calls.

a You phone your friend, Joe. His sister, Suzi answers.

SUZI: Hello?
YOU: (1) _____
SUZI: I'm not sure if he's in ... just a minute. JOE!!! Sorry he's not here. He's probably still at college. He's usually here after four o'clock.
YOU: (2) _____
SUZI: Okay, what's your number?
YOU: (3) _____
SUZI: Okay, I'll tell him.
YOU: (4) _____
SUZI: Bye.

b You call your friend, Sergio, but you hear an answering machine message.

SERGIO: Hello, this is Sergio speaking. I'm afraid I'm not here at the moment, but if you'd like to leave a message, please speak after the tone. (BEEP)
YOU: _____
_____

4 Work in pairs. Practise both calls. Use your own names.

1 How often do you use your mobile?
- **A** I use it all the time – to call people, to take photos, for the Internet. It's an essential part of my life.
- **B** I use it a lot. It's the main way I keep in touch with people.
- **C** I use it for important calls when I'm out, but that's all.
- **D** I don't have one.

2 How do you feel about the phone?
- **A** I really hate calling people. I wait for them to call me.
- **B** My phone calls are short. I just say what I need to say.
- **C** If I'm not busy, I enjoy long phone chats with my friends.
- **D** I love my phone. I spend hours every day chatting – I couldn't live without it!

3 How do you feel about computers?
- **A** I love them. I spend a lot of my free time on the computer. It's my favourite way to relax.
- **B** They're really useful in my job/studies, etc. but I'm not really interested in them.
- **C** I use a computer sometimes but I don't like them.
- **D** I'm a bit frightened of computers. I don't know how to use one.

4 What do you think about e-mail?
- **A** It's a fantastic way of keeping in touch with people you don't see very often.
- **B** It's better than phoning because you don't need to talk to the other person.
- **C** It's okay for some situations, but with friends, I prefer to phone.
- **D** I never use it.

5 How often do you use chat rooms on the Internet?
- **A** All the time. I love them!
- **B** Quite often.
- **C** I go into them sometimes, but I'm not very interested really.
- **D** I've never been in a chat room.

6 A new mobile/computer with lots of new features appears in the shops. How do you feel?
- **A** Excited – I want one … now!
- **B** I'll wait and see what other people say about them.
- **C** Oh, no! Not something new to learn about!
- **D** I don't pay any attention. I'm not interested.

7 How do you keep in touch with your friends? Put these in order of most to least important.

A texting	**C** e-mail
B phone	**D** letters

Task: Analyse a questionnaire

Preparation: reading

MD Work individually. Complete the questionnaire on the left.

Task: speaking

1 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions, explaining why you feel that way. Keep a note of your partner's answers.

▶ Useful language a

2 You are going to summarise the similarities and differences between you and your partner. Plan what you will say.

▶ Useful language b

3 Work in groups, but not with your partner. Summarise your own and your partner's answers.

4 Discuss with the class. Do your friends use communication technology in the same way as you? Is there a big difference between you and your parents/grandparents?

Useful language

a Discussing your answers

I agree.

I'm the same.

I'm completely different because …

Personally, I (love the phone).

b Comparing

She uses (the Internet) a lot, but I never (use it).

She never (sends e-mails).

He loves/hates (new things).

He thinks (computers are boring), but I (love them).

STUDY...

Revising

1 At the end of a course, it is a good idea to revise what you have studied. Which approach below do you think is best each time, a or b?

a You revise for about half an hour to an hour every day.

b You do all your revision in one evening/weekend.

a You read through your Students' Book and notebook and hope that you can remember what you have read.

b You read through your books and try to do old exercises again to check that you can remember. If you can't, you go back and study that section again.

a You try not to worry if there is something you don't understand.

b You ask your teacher or check in the language summary if there is something you don't understand.

2 Compare opinions with other students. Do you have any other ideas for revising?

Pronunciation spot

The sounds /æ/ and /ʌ/

a Use the irregular verb list on page 149 to complete the gaps with the Past simple and Past participle forms of the verbs.

		Past simple	Past participle
1	run	ran	run
2	sing	____	____
3	drink	____	____
4	ring	____	____

b T14.7 **Listen and check. Notice the difference between sound 1 /æ/ and sound 2 /ʌ/.**

1 /æ/ r<u>a</u>n 2 /ʌ/ r<u>u</u>n

c T14.8 **Listen to ten words and decide if they are sound 1 /æ/ or sound 2 /ʌ/.**

PRACTISE...

1 Ways of communicating ☐

Complete the sentences. (There may be more than one answer.)

a You see a beautiful view so you get out your camera and take a photo .

b You phone a friend, but her brother answers and says that she's out so you _____ .

c You borrow your friend's mobile to _____ .

d When you come home, you play your answering machine to _____ .

e It's your friend's birthday so you _____ .

▶ **Need to check? Vocabulary, page 122.**

2 Present perfect ☐

Complete the sentences with the Present perfect form of the verb.

a I've been (go) abroad twice this year.

b I _____ (never break) an arm or leg.

c I _____ (miss) an English lesson this week.

d I _____ (never steal) anything.

e I _____ (go) out a lot in the evening recently.

f I _____ (just have) lunch.

▶ **Need to check? Language summary A, page 158.**

3 Time phrases with the Present perfect and Past simple ☐

Use the time phrases to decide if the verb in brackets should be Present perfect (PP) or Past simple (PS).

a I (see) your cousin yesterday. PS

b My parents (just come back) from Paris.

c My sister (take) her driving test last week, but she (not pass).

d I (never meet) her husband.

e We're too late! The film (start) at 7.15.

f (you ever go) skiing?

▶ **Need to check? Language summary B, page 159.**

4 Telephone language ☐

Complete the phone conversations with the phrases in the box.

ask him to call me	call me back	can I speak to	he's not here	of course

A: Hello, (a) _____ Richard, please?

B: Hi Jan. I'm sorry, (b) _____ at the moment.

A: Can you (c) _____ ?

B: Yes, (d) _____ .

C: ... please leave a message after the tone. (BEEP)

D: Hi Mark. It's Julie. Can you (e) _____ ?

▶ **Need to check? Real life, page 125.**

REMEMBER!

Look back at the areas you have practised. Tick the ones you feel confident about. Now try the MINI-CHECK on page 163 to check what you know!

MODULE 15

Going places

- Prepositions of movement
- *have to, don't have to, can* and *can't*
- Vocabulary: Things in a town
- Listening: A tour of Edinburgh
- Real life: Following directions
- Task: Plan a website about your town

Vocabulary

Things in a town

1 MD Look at the photos of five cities. Which of the things in the box can you see?

a palace	a bridge	a canal
a cathedral	a church	a hill
a sports stadium	a mountain	a river
a shopping centre	a square	a mosque
traditional buildings	an art gallery	a temple
beautiful views	modern buildings	a statue

2 a T15.1 Listen to five people talking about their cities. Which things in the box do they mention?

1 Fabrizio from Venice, Italy
2 Yumi from Kyoto, Japan
3 Murat from Istanbul, Turkey
4 Claudia from Rio de Janeiro, Brazil
5 Marina from St Petersburg, Russia

b Which of these cities would you most like to visit. Why?

Pronunciation

T15.2 Listen and repeat. Then write the words in the correct column according to the stress.

●•	•●	●••	•●•
river			

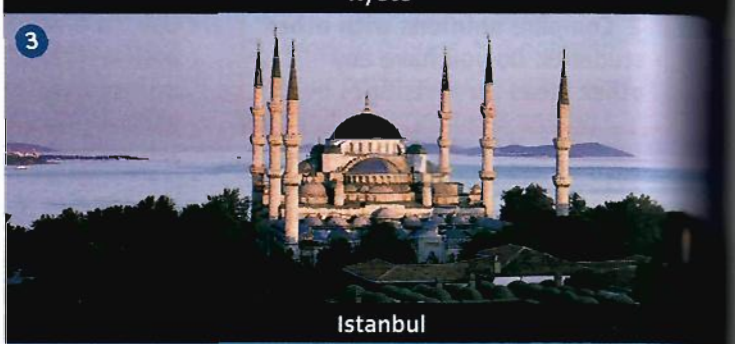
3 Look at some postcards from other cities on page 145. Choose one and describe it to your partner. Your partner says which one it is.

4 Work in pairs. Describe your town/city.

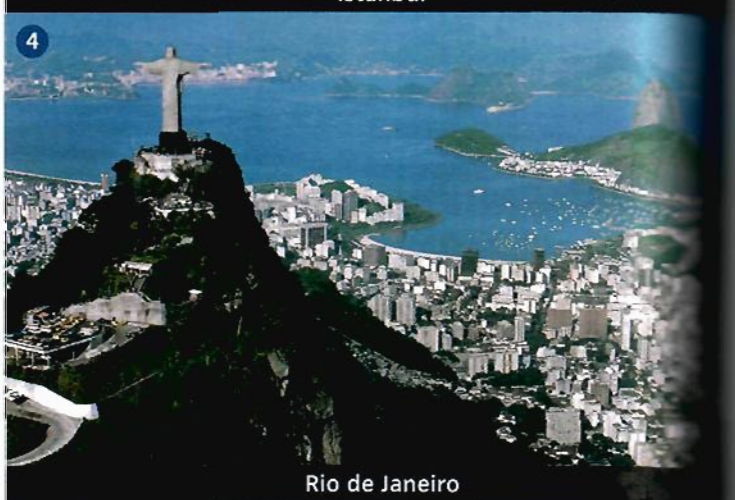
There are a lot of parks. There isn't a beach.

Venice

Kyoto

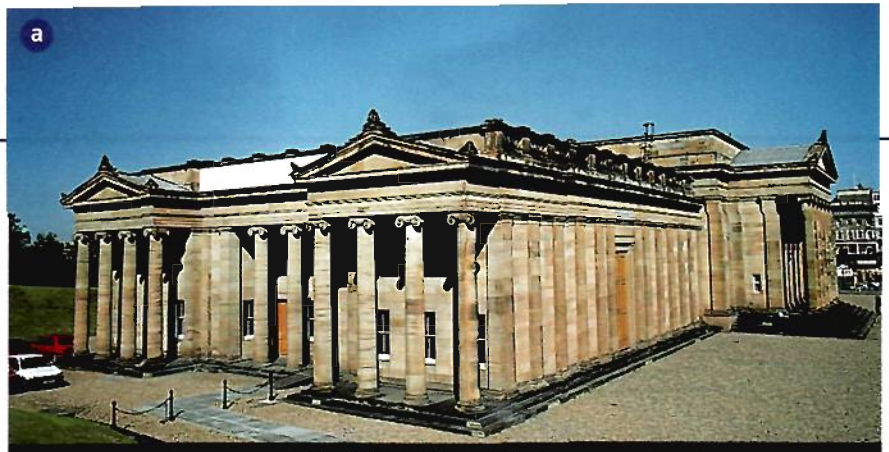


Istanbul



Rio de Janeiro

St Petersburg

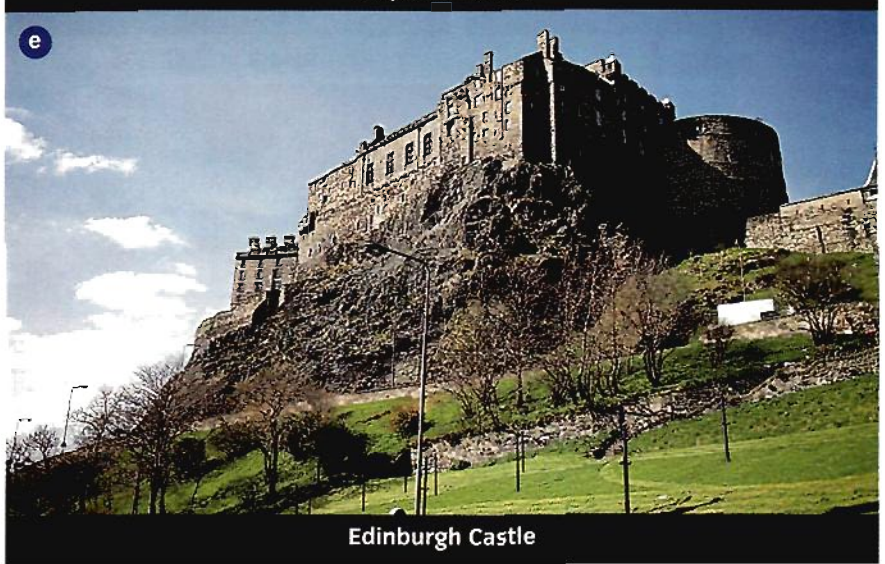


Scottish National Gallery

John Knox's House

The Royal Mile

Holyrood Palace



Edinburgh Castle

Listening

A tour of Edinburgh

1 Look at the photos. What do you know about Edinburgh?

2 T15.3 Rosa and Marcus are taking a bus tour. Listen to the guided tour and match the pictures to the extracts.

Extract 1 ☐
Extract 2 ☐
Extract 3 ☐
Extract 4 ☐
Extract 5 ☐

3 MD Listen again and complete the sentences with the correct numbers.

a St Margaret's Chapel, the oldest part of the building, is nearly _____ years old.
b The Royal Mile is Edinburgh's longest street. It's _____ kilometres long.
c John Knox's house is about _____ years old.
d John Knox was a religious reformer who died in _____ .
e There are about _____ paintings in the Scottish National Gallery.
f The Gallery opens at _____ o'clock.
g Mary Queen of Scots lived in Holyrood Palace from 1561 until _____ .

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer about the places Rosa and Marcus visit.

How old is St Margaret's Chapel?

5 Discuss these questions.

- Have you ever visited Britain? Where did you go?
- Would you like to visit Edinburgh?
- Which other cities in the world would you really like to visit? Why?

Language focus 1

Prepositions of movement

1 Read about Richard. Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

bridge	building	road	steps	taxi
airport	statue	~~stairs~~	park	river

2 T15.4 Listen and check your answers.

Grammar

Prepositions of movement

through across past along

over out of into

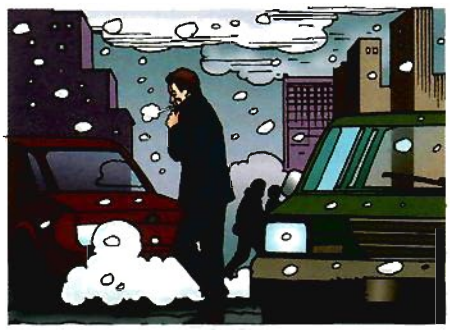
up down from to

▶ Read Language summary A on page 159.

One day, Richard had a problem at work, so he went for a walk ... a very long walk. He walked ...

a **down** the stairs

b **out** of the _____

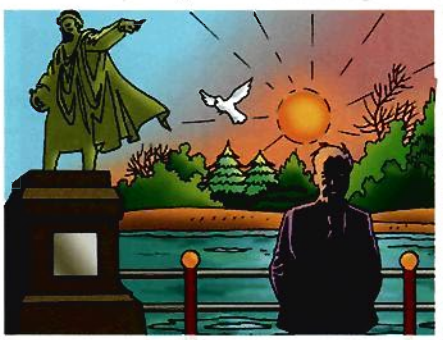


c **across** the _____

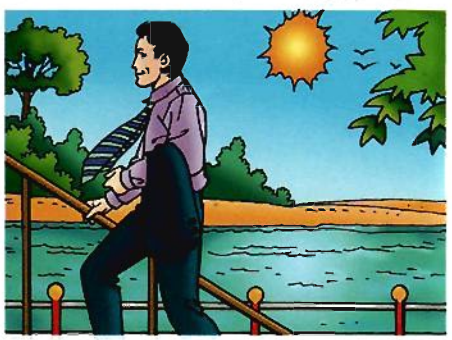
d **through** the _____

e **over** the _____

f **along** the _____



g **past** a _____



h **up** some _____

i then he got **into** a _____

j which drove him **from** the river to the _____

k and nobody ever saw him again!

Practice

Pronunciation

Listen to recording 4 again and repeat. Pay attention to the stress.

1 Work in pairs. Close your books and describe Richard's walk. Can you remember it exactly?

2 Which prepositions can you use with these things? Think of as many ideas as you can.

a ladder a bridge a field a square a shopping centre
the platform at a station a road a car a hill a river

You can go up or down a ladder.

Or under a ladder.

3 **a** MD Look at the picture. Which of these things can you see?

a journey scenery a track a tunnel a ski resort heights

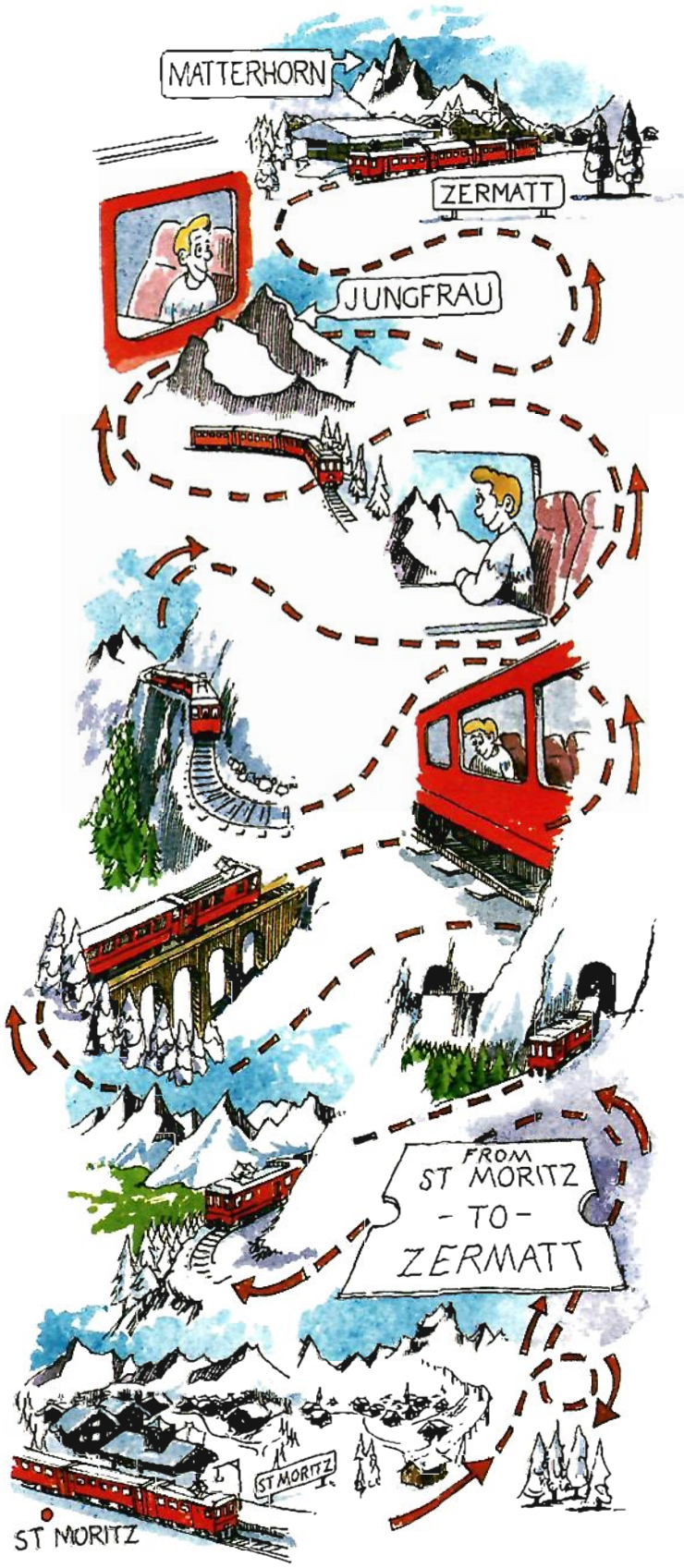
b Choose the correct alternatives. Use the picture to help you.

The Glacier Express

As your train moves (1) under / out of the little railway station at St Moritz, get ready for a day to remember! The journey (2) to / from the ski resort of St Moritz (3) to / from the attractive town of Zermatt is only 290 kilometres, but on the way it passes (4) over / through some of the most beautiful scenery in Europe.

During its journey the train goes (5) into / through ninety-one tunnels and travels (6) over / past nearly 300 bridges. If you don't like heights. Don't look (7) up / down when you travel (8) over / under the Oberalp Pass – the track is nearly two thousand metres high!

As you look (9) into / out of the train window you can see some of Switzerland's most amazing mountains – the train goes (10) past / up mountains like the famous Jungfrau. And as your train comes (11) into / out of the station at Zermatt, if you look (12) down / up you will see the Matterhorn, Switzerland's highest mountain.



4 **a** Cover the text and use the picture to describe the train journey, using the correct prepositions.

b Would you like to travel on this train? Why / Why not?

Language focus 2

have to, don't have to, can and *can't*

1 MD Look at all the signs on this page and check any words you don't know. Which signs might you see:

- in the street?
- in a park?
- at an airport?
- in a hospital?
- in a museum?

2 Match the signs a–c with the meanings below.

You **can** ride a bicycle here, but you **can't** drive your car. ☐
You **have to** stop. ☐
You **don't have to** pay in the evening or on Sundays. ☐

Grammar

Look at the verbs in bold in exercise 2. Which means:

- it is necessary to do this?
- it isn't necessary to do this?
- it's okay to do this?
- it isn't okay to do this?

▶ Read Language summaries B and C on page 159.

Practice

1 a MD Match signs d–m to the sentences below.

1 Dogs _____ go here. ☐
2 You _____ play football here. ☐
3 You _____ take photos. ☐
4 Adults and children over five _____ pay, but children under five _____ pay. ☐
5 You _____ use this toilet. ☐
6 You _____ use Visa or Mastercard but you _____ use American Express. ☐
7 You _____ show your passport. ☐
8 You _____ use a mobile in here. ☐
9 You _____ walk on the paths, not the grass. ☐
10 You _____ smoke in this area. ☐

b Complete the sentences with *have to, don't have to, can* or *can't*.

2 a MD Make sentences about school, prison and the army. Use the prompts in the box and *can, can't, have to* and *don't have to*.

You have to wear a uniform in the army.

wear a uniform	study
do a lot of exercise	watch TV
obey instructions	take exams
go out in the evening	smoke
have short hair	work hard
earn your living	get up early

b Compare sentences with a partner.

You don't have to study in prison.

Yes, but you can study in prison sometimes.

Pronunciation

1 T15.5 Listen and write down the sentences. Notice the pronunciation of *have to*.

/hæv tə/
You have to wear a uniform.

/hæv tə/
You don't have to take exams.

2 Listen again and repeat.

Real life

Following directions

1 Have you got a good sense of direction? Do you find it easy to give/follow directions?

2 Check the meaning of these phrases.

1 It's on the right.
2 Go straight on.
3 It's on the left.
4 Take the first street on the left.
5 Take the second street on the right.

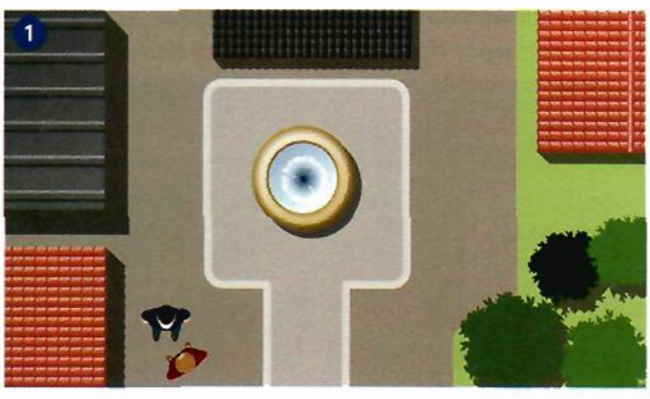
3 a T15.6 Four people ask for directions in the street. Look at the maps below, then listen and write a cross where they want to go.

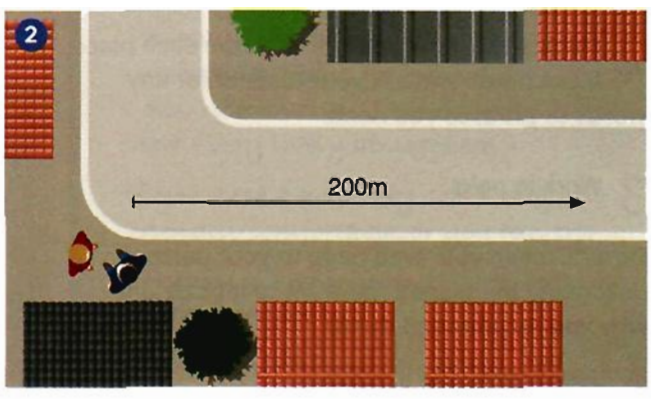
b T15.7 Listen and complete the sentences.

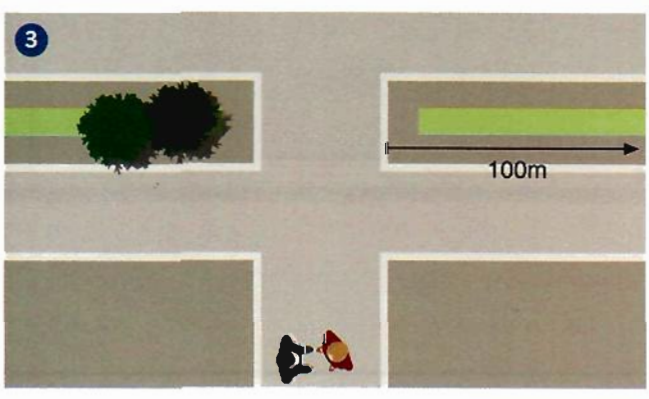
1 Excuse me, is the National Gallery _____ ?
2 Yes, it's over there _____ , look.
3 Excuse me, but _____ post office?
4 It's very _____ – go _____ and it's _____ – it's _____ metres.
5 Sorry, but _____ to the river?
6 Yes, take _____ over there, can you see it?
7 Well, _____ for about _____ and you're there.
8 Take the _____ on _____ .

4 Work in pairs. Look at Recording 6 on page 175 and practise the conversations.

5 Imagine you are standing in front of your school. Take turns with your partner to ask for and give directions to places nearby.







Task: Plan a website about your town

Preparation: vocabulary and reading

1 If you are visiting a new city or area, how do you find out about places of interest?

- on the Internet
- from a guidebook
- from tourist information
- from people you know

2 MD Look at the sections on the website. Which adjectives in the box can complete the gaps? (There are many possibilities.)

comfortable	friendly	traditional	difficult
interesting	modern	attractive	lively
fashionable	expensive	peaceful	fun
value for money	delicious	excellent	easy

Task: speaking

1 a You are compiling information for a tourist website about a town you know well (either your own or one you have visited) using the ideas above.

b Work individually or in pairs. Make a list of places to include in each section.

2 Think about how you will describe each place. Make notes and ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

3 Work in pairs.

Either Explain your web page to your partner, describing the places you want to include and why you recommend them.

▶ Useful language a and b

Or Act out a conversation in the tourist information office. Student A: You are a visitor to the town, with lots of questions about where to go and what to do. Student B: Answer Student A's questions and make recommendations. Then swap roles.

▶ Useful language b and c

Visit our city!

Top places to see

Don't miss the (a) lively/traditional/attractive town square.
You will also find many (b) _____ buildings.

Recommended hotels

This small family hotel is (c) _____ and _____ .

Recommended restaurants

... is famous for its (d) _____ food and _____ service.

Shopping

You will find many (e) _____ shops in the town centre. On Saturdays you can visit the mark which is very (f) _____ .

Parking

Parking in the main square is very (g) _____ .

Nightlife

This (h) _____ club has a _____ atmosphere that you will really enjoy.

For families

This fantastic theme park will provide a (i) _____ day for all the family.

Places to visit nearby

This (j) _____ village is just five kilometres from the town centre.

Useful language

a Explaining your web page

I/We chose ... because it's ...

The best (place for shopping/families) is ...

A good (restaurant/hotel/place to visit) is ...

... is/isn't very good.

b Recommending

I recommend ... because ...

Go to ... – you'll really enjoy it.

You can/could try ...

I don't recommend ... because ...

c Asking questions

Can you recommend a good (hotel)?

What are the best places to visit?

What about (restaurants)?

How do I get there?

Is it easy to park?

Follow up: writing

Either Write an introduction to the web page making recommendations to visitors.

If you go to ... , there is lots to see and do. You can go to / visit ... It's really interesting/beautiful/peaceful. I also recommend ... There's a beautiful view / very lively atmosphere.

If you need a hotel, try ... It's very friendly/comfortable, or you can try ...

For eating, I recommend ... It's very ... and the service is ...

In the evening, you could try ... or ...

If you come to visit with your family, I recommend ... and ...

Or Make a poster showing all the information you will put on the website. (You can include photos and illustrations if you want.)

CONSOLIDATION

A Verb practice

Write the correct form of the verb in brackets. You can use the Present simple, the Past simple or the Present perfect.

Matt Groening is the man who (1) *invented* (invent) the world's most popular cartoon. People in almost 100 countries (2) _____ (watch) *The Simpsons* every week. Groening (3) _____ (be born) in Portland, Oregon in 1954. When he (4) _____ (be) twenty-six he (5) _____ (start) drawing cartoons for *The Los Angeles Reader*, a weekly newspaper. In 1986 Matt (6) _____ (invent) the Simpson family for the popular *Tracey Ullman Show*. He (7) _____ (give) them the names of his family: Matt's father's name is Homer, his mother is Margaret, and he (8) _____ (have got) two sisters, Lisa and Maggie.

The short *Simpsons* cartoons (9) _____ (be) very popular, and in 1989 Fox studios (10) _____ (pay) twenty million dollars for Groening to produce thirteen thirty-minute programmes. After the first show at Christmas 1989, *The Simpsons* (11) _____ (make) two billion dollars just for Simpson tee-shirts, toys and other merchandise!

Groening and his artists, musicians and actors (12) _____ (make) fifteen series of programmes so far, and in spring 2005 the show (13) _____ (become) the longest-running comedy in the history of American TV. Many famous people (14) _____ (appear) on the show, including the actress Elizabeth Taylor, Bono from the rock band U2, British Prime Minister Tony Blair and three US Presidents: Presidents Carter, Clinton and Bush!

B Articles

Complete the gaps in the joke with *a*, *an*, *the* or – (no article).

It was (1) *a* fine summer day in Sherwood Forest in (2) _____ England, and the year was 1194. Early in (3) _____ morning (4) _____ poor man went into (5) _____ forest to try and find some wood for his fire. Suddenly (6) _____ man wearing (7) _____ green shirt and (8) _____ green trousers rode up and dropped (9) _____ bag of money into (10) _____ poor man's hands. 'Who are you?' asked (11) _____ poor man. 'I'm Robin Hood,' said (12) _____ man in green. 'I take (13) _____ money from rich people and I give it to poor people.' 'Hurrah! hurrah!' said (14) _____ poor man. 'I'm rich! I'm rich!' Robin Hood thought for (15) _____ minute. Then he took out his sword. He pointed (16) _____ sword at (17) _____ man and said, 'Rich, are you? Well, then, give me (18) _____ money!'

C Writing and speaking

1 Work in pairs. Choose one of the following situations and write a short conversation (7–10 lines). Use the page numbers to help you.

a This is the end of your English course. Talk to another student about your plans or interview a famous person on television about his or her plans. *Module 12 page 104 and Module 13 page 116*

b An English-speaking tourist is lost in your town and asks you for directions (first decide where you are in town). Give her/him directions. *Module 15 page 133*

c Telephone a school in Britain. Ask for some information about courses for learning English. You also want to find out about accommodation. *Module 13 pages 116–117 and Module 14 page 125*

d You are sitting in a café with an Australian friend. It is in the afternoon and you want to go somewhere together in the evening. Try to decide where to go. *Module 12 page 107*

2 Now practise your conversation. Where are the stressed words? Do you need to use polite intonation?

3 Act out your conversation in front of the class.

D Listening: Song: *Trains and Boats and Planes*

1 The words in the box are all in the song. Work in pairs. Check the meaning of any words you don't know. What do you think the story of the song is?

Paris	in love	wait	promised	a trip
had to go back	wish	Rome	a star	

Trains and Boats and Planes

Trains and boats and planes are going by
They mean a journey to Paris or Rome
To someone else but not for me.
The trains and boats and planes
Carried you away, away from me.
We are so in love, and high above
We had a ring to wish upon. Wish
And dreams come true, but not for me
The trains and boats and planes
Carried you away, away from me.
You are from another part of the country,
You had to go back a while and then
You said you soon would come back again.
I wait here like I promised to.
I wait here but where are you?
Trains and boats and planes took you away,
But every time I watch them I pray
And if my prayers can cross the land
The trains and the boats and planes
Will bring you back, back here to me.

(Burt Bacharach)

2 C1 Look at the lines printed in red in the song above. Find one word that is different from the song. Listen and circle the word that is different.

3 Listen to the song again and write in the correct words.

~~going~~ → passing

4 Which is the correct story of the song, a or b?

a He travelled to Paris and Rome on holiday by train and boat and plane. He met her and they fell in love and had dreams about their future, but she had to return to her country. He promised to visit her but he didn't, so she feels very unhappy.

b She met a man in her country and they fell in love. He returned to his country and he promised to come back to her, but he didn't. Usually when she sees trains and boats and planes she thinks about holidays and feels happy, but now when she sees them she thinks of him and is unhappy.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

a Have you got any friends from different countries? Where and when did you meet them?
b Have you ever met someone nice or interesting on holiday? Where and when?

E Vocabulary: Word groups

Find three words in the word square for each topic.

S	P	O	R	T	S	S	T	A	D	I	U	M
D	O	N	K	E	Y	X	C	F	O	G	G	Y
A	B	Y	A	W	W	G	E	I	C	L	W	S
R	M	O	N	D	I	P	L	A	V	A	M	N
T	E	N	G	I	N	E	E	R	I	N	G	O
G	M	U	A	T	D	R	P	E	Q	G	X	W
A	A	K	R	F	Y	S	H	S	Z	U	T	I
L	I	W	O	T	I	K	A	J	H	A	D	N
L	L	D	O	B	W	J	N	O	H	G	P	G
E	Z	Q	E	R	M	A	T	H	S	E	T	Y
R	G	S	Q	U	A	R	E	G	H	S	L	P
Y	L	E	T	T	E	R	R	P	H	O	N	E

animals	donkey
weather	
school subjects	
ways of communicating	
things in a town	

COMMUNICATION

Module 6: Real life, exercise 4, page 58

Student A: Choose something to eat and drink from the menu. Order your food.
Student B: Take Student A's order. Tell him/her how much it costs.
Then swap roles.

Menu

Breakfast			
croissant and jam	1.50		
fried eggs, tomatoes and toast	2.00		
sausages and eggs	2.25		
Burgers			
king size	3.00		
classic	2.75		
with cheese	3.25		
Cakes – *homemade*			
chocolate	1.50		
coffee	1.50		
apple	1.75		
Drinks			
tea	1.00	hot chocolate	1.00
coffee	1.50	lemonade	1.00
mineral water	1.75	fruit juice	1.00
Sandwiches			
tuna mayonnaise	2.50		
egg mayonnaise	2.50		
cheese and tomato	2.50		
Extras			
French fries	2.00		
salad	2.50		
bread	1.50		

Module 5: Real life, exercise 5, page 49

Student A

It is 9.30 in the morning and you are in Brighton, in the south of England. You have information about trains to London: The next train is at 9.49. It arrives in London at 10.40. It costs £10.40 for a single ticket and £16.50 for a day return ticket. It leaves from platform 3.

Module 1: Practice, exercise 3, page 12

Student A

Antonio Banderas – actor – Spain – married – born 1960

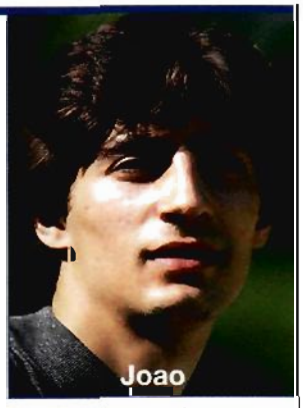
Christina Aguilera – singer – the USA – single – born 1980

Module 4: Task, exercise 1, page 39

Student A

Marina

Hi, My name's Marina, and I come from Tachov in the Czech Republic. It's a town in the west of the country. I'm eighteen years old and I study engineering at the university here. I am interested in all types of sport, especially hockey and basketball. I also love reading and computers and I love dogs – my family have four! Please write back!



Joao

Hi! My name's Joao and I come from Bela Horizonte in the south of Brazil. I'm twenty-five years old and I'm at university. I'm studying languages at university. I speak Portuguese (of course) and also English and Spanish. I love rock music, but I don't like classical music. I'm also very interested in sport. I play tennis every day. I want to talk to people from all over the world to learn more about their culture.

ACTIVITIES

Module 1: Task, exercise 1, page 14

Student B

1 Look at Chrissie's documents and complete the table about Chrissie.

US DRIVER'S LICENCE

Full Name
Christina Elizabeth NAGANO

Date of Birth 10.10.82

Creations

Chrissie Nagano
Marketing Manager

Fax 324 • 471 • 0807
Cellphone 324 • 809 • 6439
E-mail chrissie@creations.com

Digital Creations for a Changing Planet

Useful language

a Questions

What's his first name / surname / full name?

How do you spell it?

What's her work / home / mobile number?

What's his job?

How old is she?

Where's he from?

Is she married?

b Other useful phrases

I don't know.

Sorry, I don't understand.

2 Ask Student A questions about Jamie. Write the information on the table.

▶ Useful language a and b

	Chrissie	Jamie
Full name		
Age		
Address		
Job		
Where from?		
E-mail address		
Telephone number		
Married / Single?		

Module 3: Real life, exercise 4, page 30

Student A

Ask and answer with your partner to complete the gaps.

What time is *Jennifer Lopez in concert* on?

It's on Wednesday at twenty to eight.

TV THIS WEEK

Don't miss ...

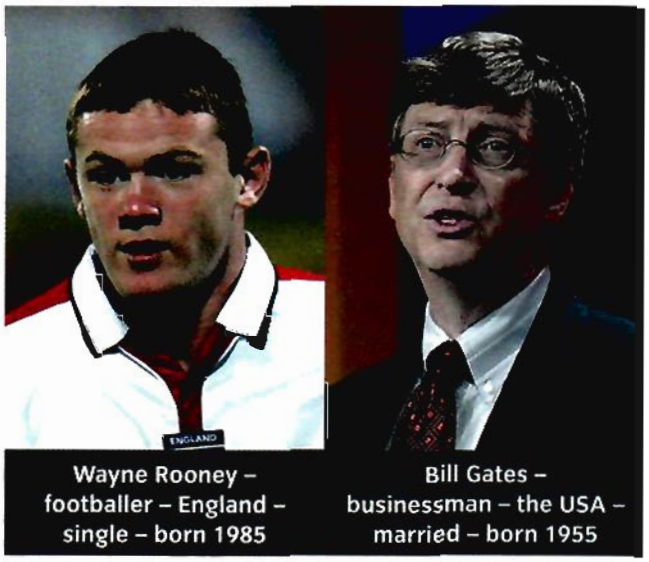
Jennifer Lopez in concert (1 _____ , Channel 5)
Two hours of Jennifer Lopez in concert at Wembley Arena last month
Holiday! (Thurs 7.25, BBC 1)
Holiday reports from Hong Kong, Morocco, Budapest and Rio de Janeiro
Friends (2 _____ , Channel 4)
Ross and Rachel go to the beach (R)
Live Football (Sat 2.45, Sky Sports 2)
Chelsea V Manchester United ... the big one!
Romeo and Juliet (3 _____ , BBC 2)
The Kirov Ballet perform the classic ballet at the Royal Opera House

Best films

The Matrix (USA, 1999) (Mon 9.55, Channel 4)
Sci-fi action starring Keanu Reeves
Shrek (USA, 2001) (4 _____ , BBC 1)
Comedy for all the family
Love Actually (UK 2003) (Wed 8.15 and 11.45, Sky Movies plus) For the first time on TV

Module 1: Practice, exercise 3, page 12

Student B

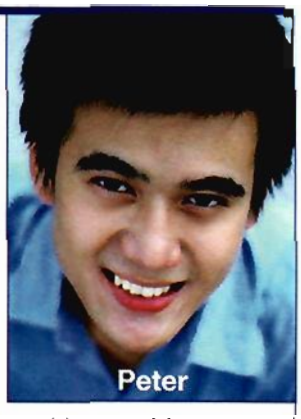


Wayne Rooney – footballer – England – single – born 1985

Bill Gates – businessman – the USA – married – born 1955

Module 4: Task, exercise 1, page 39

Student B



My name's Peter and I come from Singapore. I'm twenty-six years old and I'm a hotel receptionist. I speak two languages English and Mandarin Chinese. My interests are writing and listening to music, playing softball, going to the movies and going out with my friends. I also like cooking and I want to make friends all over the world.

Hello! My name's Sofia and I come from Santander, a town in the north of Spain. I'm twenty-two years old and I also study music (at the University of Santander) and play the guitar – the Spanish classical guitar. I speak French as well as English (and Spanish, of course) and love football and tennis. I love going to the cinema and going out with my friends. I love all animals, especially cats. We've got five! I hope you write back!

Module 13: Task, exercise 2a, page 116

Taka

26 years old, from Japan.

Works as a junior fashion designer in Japan. Staying in England for one year to improve her (very good) English. Wants to do a course where she will meet and talk to people to use her English.

Interests: dance, fashion, photography.

Needs to learn more about computers for her job.

Module 11: Task, exercise 1b, page 102

FANTASTIC FACTS C

GEOGRAPHY

Riyadh is the capital of Saudi Arabia.
Dubrovnik is the capital of Croatia.
Saigon is the capital of Vietnam.

NUMBERS

There are 100,000 centimetres in a kilometre.
There are 86,400 seconds in a day.
There are 50 states in the USA.

LANGUAGES

In Jamaica they speak English.
In Brazil they speak Portuguese.
The official languages of Hong Kong are Chinese and English.

SPORT

The 1996 Olympics were in Atlanta in the USA.
There are five players in a basketball team.
The 2002 football world cup was in Japan and Korea.

Module 5: Task, exercise 1, page 48

TRANSPORT SURVEY

1 drive / car? ○

2 ride / bicycle? ○

3 How far / travel every week?

- 0 to10 kilometres ○
- 11 to 50 kilometres ○
- 51 to100 kilometres ○
- more than 100 kilometres ○

4 How often / use public transport?

- every day ○
- often, but not every day ○
- sometimes ○
- never ○

5 What / think of public transport in your town?

- excellent ○
- good ○
- okay ○
- poor ○
- I don't know ○

6 How / travel to school or work every day?

- by car ○
- by bus ○
- on foot ○
- other ○

7 How long / your journey?

- 1 to 10 minutes ○
- 10 to 30 minutes ○
- 30 to 60 minutes ○
- more than an hour ○

8 Which of these types of transport / like best?

- train ○
- bus ○
- car ○
- walking ○

Module 3: Real life, exercise 4, page 30

Student B

Ask and answer with your partner to complete the gaps.

What time is *Holiday!* on?

It's on Thursday at twenty-five past seven.

TV THIS WEEK

Don't miss ...

Jennifer Lopez in concert (Wed 7.40, Channel 5)
Two hours of Jennifer Lopez in concert at Wembley Arena last month
Holiday! (1 _____ , BBC 1)
Holiday reports from Hong Kong, Morocco, Budapest and Rio de Janeiro
Friends (Fri 9.15, Channel 4)
Ross and Rachel go to the beach (R)
Live Football (2 _____ , Sky Sports 2)
Chelsea V Manchester United ... the big one!
Romeo and Juliet (Sun 8.20, BBC 2)
The Kirov Ballet perform the classic ballet at the Royal Opera House.

Best films

The Matrix (USA, 1999) (3 _____ , Channel 4)
Sci-fi action starring Keanu Reeves
Shrek (USA, 2001) (Sun 3.30, BBC 1)
Comedy for all the family
Love Actually (UK 2003) (4 _____ and 5 _____ , Sky Movies plus)
For the first time on TV

Module 11: Task, exercise 1b, page 102

FANTASTIC FACTS B

GEOGRAPHY

Lake Titicaca is between Bolivia and Peru.
Lake Geneva is between Switzerland and France.
Lake Victoria is between Uganda, Tanzania and Kenya.

FOOD AND DRINK

Sushi is Japanese food (made with rice and fish).
Borscht is Russian soup.
Merlot is a type of red wine.

SPORT

Justine Henin Hardenne won the women's title in the US tennis open in 2003.
Brazil won the world cup in football in 1958, 1962, 1970, 1994 and 2002.
Justin Gatlin won the men's 100m in the Athens Olympic Games in 2004.

FAMOUS PEOPLE

Walt Disney was born in 1901 and died in 1966.
Napoleon was born in Corsica (an island that is part of France) in 1769.
King Henry the eighth of England had six wives.

Module 9: Real life, exercise 4, page 83

Student A

1 Go to the local store and try to buy these things.

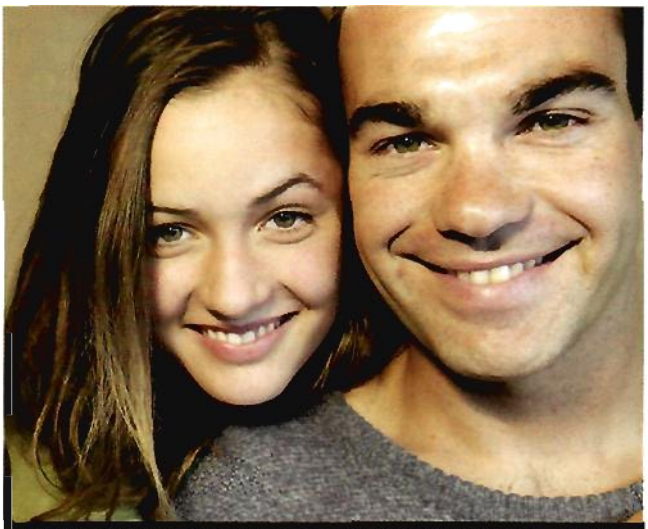
some shampoo	*a baseball cap*
a cake	*some postcards*
a film for your camera	

2 You are the shop assistant in a local store. Look at the information and serve the customer.

Prices

bananas	£1.60 a kilo
stamps	(Europe 35 pence, Other 60 pence)
T-shirts	small £9.99 medium £10.99 large £11.99
toothpaste	£1.30

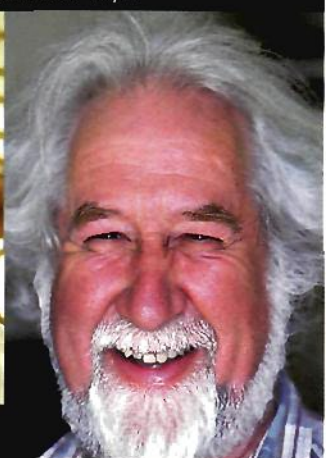
Module 9: Task, exercise 1, page 84



Mark and Lena got married last year and they moved into a new house last month. They love ethnic furniture and decorations especially rugs, lamps, plates, etc.

Tom loves music, especially folk music. Helen likes interesting ethnic clothes. Anna is eight and Steven is five. They like any kind of toys.

Amy is very interested in food and drink. She loves trying interesting and unusual food from around the world, especially, cheese, meat, bread and wine.



Roberto enjoys reading, especially travel books, cookery books, novels and poetry.

Consolidation modules 6–10, Listening, exercise D, page 94

Student A

Return to Sender

1 Listen to the song and complete the gaps.

I (1) _____ a letter to the postman,
He put it in his sack.
Bright and early next (2) _____ .
He brought my letter back.

She (3) _____ upon it:
'Return to sender, address unknown.
No such (4) _____ , no such zone. [1]'
We had a quarrel [2], a lover's spat [2]
I write 'I'm (5) _____ ,' but my letter keeps coming back.

So when I dropped it in the mailbox
I (6) _____ it 'special D [3]'.
Bright and early next morning
It (7) _____ right back to me.

She wrote upon it:
'Return to sender, (8) _____ unknown.
No such number, no such zone.'

This time I'm gonna take it myself
And (9) _____ it right in her hand.
And if it comes back the very next day
Then I'll (10) _____ the writing on it

Return to sender, address unknown.
No such number, no such zone.

[1] a zone = a part of a city or town
[2] a quarrel/a spat = an angry argument (not an important one)
[3] special D = Special delivery

(Otis Blackwell – Winfield Scott)

2 Now check your answers with Student B.

Module 11: Reading, exercise 1, page 96

The false fact is the one about volcanoes. Australia is the only continent with no active volcanoes, not Africa.

Module 6: Language focus 3, page 56

Answers to quiz

1c 2a 3a 4b

Consolidation modules 6–10, Listening, exercise D, page 94

Student B

Return to Sender

1 Listen to the song and complete the gaps.

I gave a letter to the postman,
He (1) _____ it in his sack.
Bright and early next morning,
He (2) _____ my letter back.

She wrote upon it:
'Return to sender, (3) _____ unknown.
No such number, no such zone. [1]'
We (4) _____ a quarrel [2], a lover's spat [2]
I write 'I'm sorry,' but my letter keeps coming back.

So when I (5) _____ it in the mailbox
I sent it 'special D [3].'
Bright and (6) _____ next morning
It came right back to me.

She (7) _____ upon it:
'Return to sender, address unknown.
No such (8) _____ , no such zone.'

This time I'm gonna (9) _____ it myself
And put it right in her hand.
And if it (10) _____ back the very next day
Then I'll understand the writing on it

Return to sender, address unknown.
No such number, no such zone.

[1] a zone = a part of a city or town
[2] a quarrel/a spat = an angry argument (not an important one)
[3] special D = Special delivery

(Otis Blackwell – Winfield Scott)

2 Now check your answers with Student A.

Module 5: Real life, exercise 4, page 49

Student B

It is 11.30 in the morning. You have information about trains to Glasgow in Scotland from London: The next train is at 12.00 It arrives in Glasgow at 5.30. It costs £33 for a single ticket and £55 for a return. It leaves from platform 5.

Module 11: Task, exercise 1b, page 102

FANTASTIC FACTS A

CAPITAL CITIES
Santiago is the capital of Chile.
Sofia is the capital of Bulgaria.
Kuala Lumpur is the capital of Malaysia.

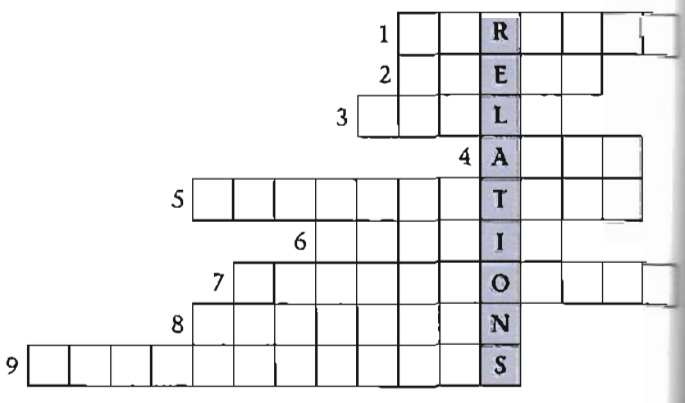
RIVERS
The River Seine is in Paris.
The River Volga is in Russia.
The River Ganges is in India.

FOOD AND DRINK
Sake is Japanese rice wine.
Tagine is Moroccan food (made with meat and vegetables).
Rigatoni is a type of pasta.

FAMOUS PEOPLE
Marie Curie discovered radium, and won the Nobel Prize in 1903.
Mozart died at the age of 35.
Madonna was born in Bay City in the USA in 1958.

NUMBERS
India has around 1,600 languages.
There are192 countries in the world.
Shakespeare wrote 36 plays.

Module 2, Practice, exercise 3a, page 22



1 Your mother and father are your ...
2 Your brother's daughter is your ...
3 Your mother's brother is your ...
4 Your mother's sister is your ...
5 Your mother's father is your ...
6 Your aunt's son is your ...
7 Your father's mother is your ...
8 Your sons and daughters are your ...
9 Your parents' parents are your ...

Module 9: Real life, exercise 4, page 83

Student B

1 You are the shop assistant in a local store. Look at the information and serve the customer.

Prices

film	24 £4.50	36 £5.50
postcards	25 pence each	
cakes	small: 60 p large: £1.50	
baseball caps	small £3.00 medium £3.50 large £4.50	

2 Go to the local store and try to buy these things.

some stamps	*some*
some bananas	*toothpaste*
some batteries for your camera	*a T-shirt*

Module 13: Task, exercise 2a, page 116

Gaby

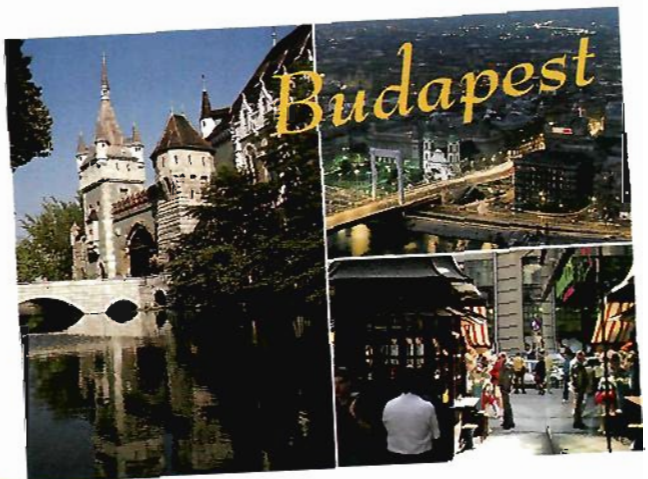
32 years old

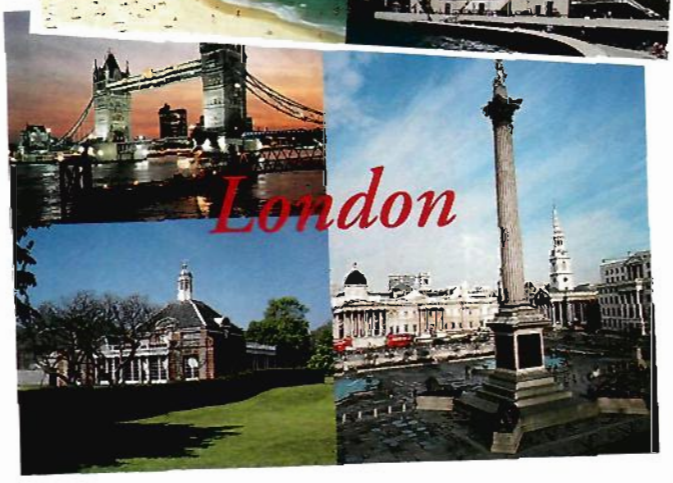
Working in a travel agency at the moment but after ten years wants a change of career. Does not want to work in an office again – would like to do something active, possibly with children.

Needs a part-time evening course, as she will continue to work during the day.

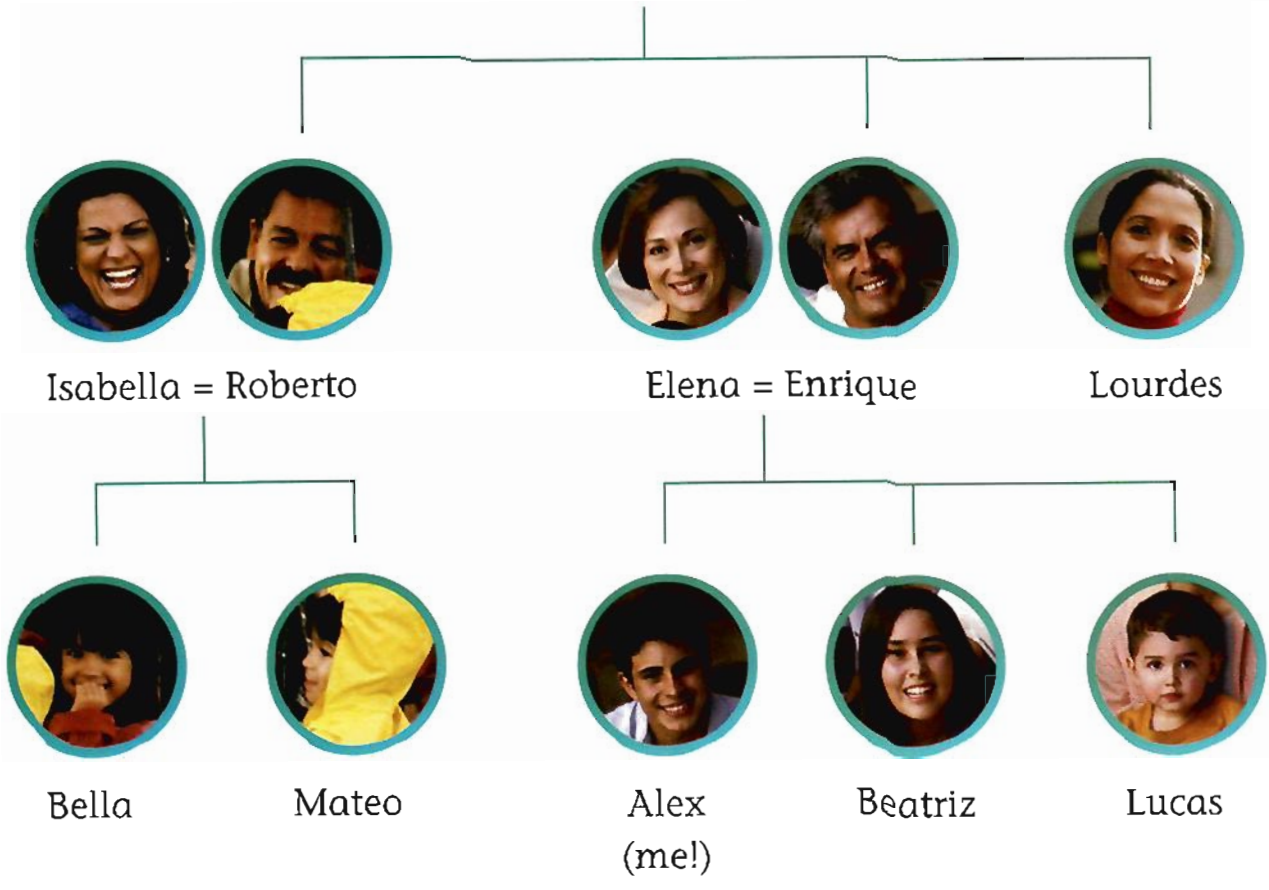
Interests: swimming, basketball, travelling and meeting new people.

Module 15, Vocabulary, exercise 3, page 128





Module 2: Task, exercise 1b, page 23



Module 10: Task, exercise 2, page 93

Module 13: Real life, exercise 4, page 118

APPLICATION FORM — **W.E.M.C.O.T.** (West Midland College of Technology)

English as a Foreign Language

Please complete this form using BLOCK LETTERS.

Section A Personal Details

1 Title: (Mr / Mrs / Miss / Ms / Dr, etc.)
2 Surname: .....
3 First Name(s): .....
4 Date of Birth: Day ..... Month ..... Year .....
5 Sex: Male ☐ Female ☐
6 Nationality: .....
7 Home Address: .....
8 Telephone No: a) Day: ..... b) Evening: .....
9 Fax number: .....
10 E-mail address: .....
11 Passport No: .....
12 a) Have you got a student/tourist visa? .....
b) Date of expiry: .....

Section B Course Details

1 Start Date: .....
2 for ..... Terms (Maximum 4)

Term 1 ☐	Term 2 ☐	Term 3 ☐	Term 4 ☐
Jan – March	April – June	July – Sep	Oct – Dec

3 Why do you want to study English at WEMCOT?
.....
.....

4 What level do you think your English is?
Elementary ☐ Lower Intermediate ☐ Intermediate ☐
Higher Intermediate ☐ Advanced ☐ Proficiency ☐

Module 6: Practice, exercise 2a, page 55

Shopping list

nuts
orange juice
mineral water
oranges
grapes
apples
bananas
green vegetables
fish
yoghurt
pasta
bread

Module 5: Language focus 2, exercise 3, page 47

1 Korea: Seoul
Argentina: Buenos Aires
Poland: Warsaw
Canada: Ottawa
2 Vladimir Putin is a president.
Jackie Chan is an actor.
JK Rowling is a writer.
3 People drive on the left in Australia and the UK. In the USA they drive on the right.
4 a a camera d coins
b an apple e an aeroplane
c a mobile phone
5 Boston is in the USA.
São Paolo is in Brazil.
Cape Town is in South Africa.
Seville is in Spain.
6 a Sydney, Australia
b Bangkok, Thailand
c Rome, Italy

Module 9: Practice, exercise 2a, page 80

Complete the questions with the correct superlative form. Then compare answers with a partner.

Your town and country

a Which is (good) restaurant in your town?
b Which is (busy) street in your town?
c Which is (pretty) park in your town?
d Which area has (bad) traffic in your town?
e Which part of your country has (beautiful) scenery?
f Which is (big) city in your country?
g Which is (high) mountain in your country?

People you know

a Who is (tall) person in your class?
b Who writes (fast)?
c Who is (old) person in your family?
d Who is (young) person?
e Who is (rich) person you know?
f Who is (untidy) person you know?
g Who has (long) hair?

Module 6: Task, exercise 1, page 57

Useful language

a Describing your own picture

In my picture ...

there's a (small boy)

there's some (soup)

there aren't any (balloons)

On the left / On the right / In the middle, there's ...

b Asking questions

In your picture, is there a (man) / any (rice)?

Has the man got a (cap)?

How many (spoons) are there?

What colour is the (mother's dress)?

c Talking about differences

In Picture A, there's (a balloon, some soup) but in Picture B ...

Module 13: Task, exercise 2a, page 116

Oliver

18 years old

Doesn't know what he wants to do as a career. Spends a lot of his time playing in a rock band with his friends. He does not really want to do a full-time course because of this.

His parents are worried about him – they want him to study something useful for his career.

Interests: music, drama and computers.

Verb	Past simple	Past participle	Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been	let	let	let
become	became	become	lose	lost	lost
begin	began	begun	make	made	made
bring	brought	brought	mean	meant	meant
build	built	built	meet	met	met
buy	bought	bought	pay	paid	paid
catch	caught	caught	put	put	put
choose	chose	chosen	read /riːd/	read /red/	read /red/
come	came	come	ring	rang	rung
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
drink	drank	drunk	send	sent	sent
drive	drove	driven	show	showed	shown
eat	ate	eaten	shut	shut	shut
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feed	fed	fed	sleep	slept	slept
feel	felt	felt	speak	spoke	spoken
fight	fought	fought	spend	spent	spent
find	found	found	stand	stood	stood
fly	flew	flown	steal	stole	stolen
forget	forgot	forgotten	swim	swam	swum
get	got	got	take	took	taken
give	gave	given	teach	taught	taught
go	went	gone/been	tell	told	told
have	had	had	think	thought	thought
hear	heard	heard	understand	understood	understood
keep	kept	kept	wake	woke	woken
know	knew	known	wear	wore	worn
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt	win	won	won
leave	left	left	write	wrote	written

LANGUAGE

Module 1

A *be*: positive form

I'm (= I am)	from Valencia.
You're (= you are)	a student.
He's (= he is)	twenty years old.
She's (= she is)	Chinese.
It's (= it is)	from Poland.
We're (= we are)	teachers.
They're (= they are)	English.

B *be*: negative form

I'm not (= I am not)	a student.
You aren't (= you are not)	married.
He isn't (= he is not)	Italian.
She isn't (= she is not)	Saturday.
It isn't (= it is not)	married.
We aren't (= we are not)	on business.
They aren't (= they are not)	on holiday.

REMEMBER!
We also use these negative forms. They mean the same.
You're not from Moscow
He/She/It's not English
We/They're not married.

C *be*: questions and short answers

Questions		Short answers	
Am I	here?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you	married?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is he	Egyptian?	Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Is she	on holiday?	Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Is it	Friday?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
Are we	friends?	Yes we are.	No, we aren't.
Are they	in New York?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

D Question words

What	's	your job?
	are	your names?
Where	's	Alain from?
	are	your friends?
How old	's	Richard?
	are	you?
Who	's	your teacher?
	are	they?

E Personal pronouns and possessive adjectives

Personal pronoun	Possessive adjective	
I	my	My name's James Taylor.
you	your	How old is your car?
he	his	His address is 6 Leyton Avenue.
she	her	What's her telephone number?
it	its	Its full name is the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC).
we	our	Our children are six and eight years old.
they	their	What's their e-mail address?

REMEMBER!
1 **His** *is for a man.* **His** name's **Paul.**
Her *is for a woman.* **Her** name's **Anna**

2 **Your** *is for singular and plural*
A: What's **your** name? B: **Aldona.**
A: What are **your** names? B: **Julio** and **Maria.**

F *a* and *an*: indefinite articles with jobs

We use *a/an* for jobs.
Use ***an*** before vowels (a, e, i, o, u) ***an** actor. **an** engineer*
Use ***a*** before consonants (b, c, d, f, g, h, ...) ***a** doctor, **a** manager*

G Capital letters

We use capital letters for:
- names *Lara Croft, Queen Elizabeth*
- countries *China, the United States*
- nationalities *Brazilian, Greek*
- roads *23 Stamford Road, Fifth Avenue*
- towns/cities *New York, Istanbul*

Module 2

A *this, that, these* and *those*

	Here		There	
singular	this	(book)	that	(book)
plural	these	(books)	those	(books)

*Mr Thomson, **this** is Jane Dunn* ***These** apples **are** good.*
***Are these** your keys?* *Who **are those** people?*

REMEMBER!
In the answer we usually use **it's** *or* **they're.**
A: What's this/that? B: **It's** a credit card.
A: What are these/those? B: **They're** videos.

B Nouns: singular and plural

Singular	Plural	Spelling
a credit card	credit cards	+ *s*
a watch	watches	+ *es* (after *ch, sh, s, x, z*)
a family	families	+ *ies* (consonant + *y* → *ies*)

SUMMARY

C *have got*

1 Positive, negative and question forms

We use *have got* for:

a possession.
I've got a new mobile. *My school's got twenty-five computers.*

b relationships.
José's got a new girlfriend. *They have got three children.*

We can use *have* instead of *have got*.
My school has twenty-five computers.
They have three children.

Positive form	I/you/we/they've got (= have got) he/she/it's got (= has got)	a new telephone number. a television.
Negative form	I/you/we/they haven't got (= have not got) he/she/it hasn't got (= has not got)	a cassette player. a mobile phone.
Question form	Have I/you/we/they got Has he/she/it got	an English–Portuguese dictionary? a CD player?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they have. Yes, he/she/it has.	No, I/you/we/they haven't No, he/she/it hasn't.

REMEMBER!

1 **He's** American. (he's = he **is**) **He's** got an American car. (he's = he **has**)

2 We do not use the short form of the verb in short answers

Yes, I **have**. NOT: ~~Yes, I've~~.
Yes, he **has**. NOT: ~~Yes, he's~~.

2 Question forms with question words

How many	brothers	has Elena got?
What	answer	have you got for question 2?

D Adjectives

Adjectives:
– go **before** nouns *a comfortable car* NOT: ~~*a car comfortable*~~
– do **not** change *blue eyes* NOT: ~~*blues eyes*~~
– do **not** use *and* *a fantastic new motorbike* NOT: *a fantastic* ~~*and*~~ *new motorbike*

E *a/an* with singular nouns and adjectives

1 We use *a/an* + singular nouns.
***a** diary, **a** job, **a** tourist, **a** photo, **an** apple, **an** address, **an** e-mail* (but ***a** university*)

2 We use *a/an* + adjectives and singular nouns.
***a** new car, **a** white cat, **a** French cigarette, **an** English teacher*

F Possessive *'s* and *of*

1 We use a person + **'s** for possession
Jane's brother NOT: ~~*the brother of Jane*~~
Patrick's computer
His friend's car
My father's name

2 If the first noun is plural, the apostrophe comes after the 's':
my parents' house (= two parents)
the teachers' room (= many teachers)

3 We usually use *of* before things or places.
*a picture **of** a car* NOT: ~~*a car's picture*~~
*the Queen **of** England* NOT: ~~*England's Queen*~~
*the Tower **of** London* NOT: ~~*London's Tower*~~

G Apostrophes

1 We use apostrophes:

a with the short forms of *is* and *has*.
That's my book *She's got four sisters*
He's on holiday. *What's your name?*

b To show possession:
Hannah's teacher. *My cousins' school.*

2 We do not use apostrophes to show that a noun is plural.

These are my keys. *They've got two babies.*

Module 3

A Present simple: questions and short answers (*I, you, we, they*)

Question form	Do I/you/we/they	speak French? study at university?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they No, I/you/we/they	do. don't.

REMEMBER!
We do not use the full verb in the short answer.

Do you speak German? Yes, I **do**. NOT: ~~*Yes, I speak*~~
No, I **don't**. NOT: ~~*No, I don't speak*~~.

We use the Present simple:

a for things that are generally / always true.
*Do you **work** for a big company?* *Do they **live** in the city centre?*
*Do I **know** your brother?*

b for habits and routines.
*Do you **study** at the weekend?* *Do they **go** out a lot?*

B Present simple: positive and negative forms

Positive form	I/you/we/they	live in a big city. drink coffee.
Negative form	I/you/we/they	don't like coffee. don't live in a flat.

C Telling the time

After the hour we use *past* and before the hour we use *to*.

3.05	*five past three*	3.35	*twenty-five to four*
3.10	*ten past three*	3.40	*twenty to four*
3.15	*quarter past three*	3.45	*quarter to four*
3.20	*twenty past three*	3.50	*ten to four*
3.25	*twenty-five past three*	3.55	*five to four*
3.30	*half past three*		

We can also say *three ten* (3.10), *three thirty-five* (3.35), etc.

REMEMBER!

at	***on***	***in***
at ten o'clock	*on Sunday*	*in the morning*
at night		*in the afternoon*
at the weekend		*in the evening*

Module 4

A Present simple: positive and negative (*he, she* and *it*)

1 In the *he/she/it* positive form of the Present simple, we add 's' to the verb.
He loves chocolate. She hates dogs. It opens at five o'clock.

The spelling rules for *he, she* and *it*:

Verb	Rule	
Most verbs	add **s**	*Beth comes from the USA.* *Paul wants a new car.*
Ends in a consonant + y	change y to ies	*This airline flies to Slovenia.*
Ends in: *ch , sh , s, x, z*	add es	*Andrew watches a lot of videos.* *Fran finishes work at six.*
do and *go*	add es	*My manager goes home at eleven!* *Pat does all the housework.*
have	*has*	*He has breakfast at seven.*

2 We form the negative with *doesn't* (= does not) + verb.
*He **doesn't eat** meat.* NOT ~~*He doesn't eats*~~
*She **doesn't like** coffee. It **doesn't open** on Sunday.*

Positive form	he/she/it	likes dogs. loves chocolate.
Negative form	he/she/it	doesn't like (= does not like) my brother. doesn't eat (= does not eat) fish.

B Present simple: questions and short answers (*he, she* and *it*)

1 We form *he/she/it* Present simple questions with *does* + verb.
***Does** he **live** with his parents?* NOT ~~*Does he lives?*~~
***Does** she **like** London? **Does** it **open** late?*

Question form	Does he/she/it	live with you? rain a lot in Brazil?
Short answers	Yes, he/she/it No, he/she/it	does. doesn't.

2 Notice how we form *Wh-* questions with the Present simple.

What	does	he/she/it	think of Japan? like eating?
Where	does	Juan	come from? live? work?
What time	does	the class Anna	start? go to work?

C Adverbs of frequency

We use frequency adverbs and the Present simple to say *how often* we do something.

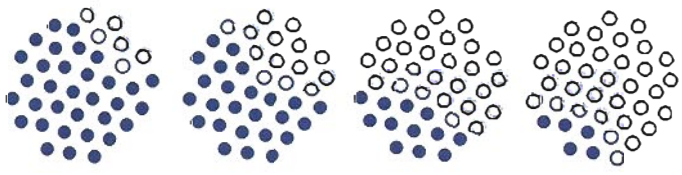
never — not often — often — always
0% — sometimes — usually — 100%

a We usually put the adverb *before* the verb.
*My children **sometimes** watch a video on Sunday evening*
*Nicolas **never** goes to school on Saturday.*
*I **don't often** visit my brother's family.*
*I **don't usually** like pasta.*

b We put the adverb *after* the verb *be*.
*English people are **usually** very friendly.*
*The winters are **sometimes** very cold.*
*The weather isn't **always** good.*
*I'm **not often** home in the evening*

Module 5

A *most, a lot of, some, not many*



most *a lot of* *some* *not many*

Most A lot of Some Not many	people	drive to work.

B *can* and *can't*

1 We use *can* to say that it is possible to do something.
*You **can** take a train from Paddington Station to Heathrow.*

2 We use *can't* to say it is impossible to do something.
*We **can't** take a taxi because we've only got £20.*

REMEMBER!
a We always use the base form of the verb after can.

*You **can eat** Chinese food in the city centre.* NOT *you ~~can eats~~*

b We don't use do or does to make the question form.

***Can you find** taxis in the street?* NOT ~~*Do you can find taxis in the street?*~~

Positive form	I/you/he/she/it/we/they		can go by train. can take a long time.
Negative form	I/you/he/she/it/we/they		can't (= cannot) go by bus
Question form	Can	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	travel by bus?

C Definite, indefinite and zero articles

1 Indefinite article

We use *a* or *an*:
a with jobs.
*I'm **an** artist.*
b with a singular noun to mean 'one'.
*We have **a** real problem.*
c with these phrases
***a** lot of/**a** long time*

2 Definite article

We use *the*:
a with times of day.
*in **the** morning/afternoon*
*(BUT **at night**)*
b with these phrases.
*in **the** city centre*
*on **the** right/left*

3 Zero article

We do **not** use *a, an* or *the*:
a with towns and cities.
I'm from Boston

b with most countries.
Lyon is in France.
*(BUT **the** United States, **the** United Kingdom, **the** Czech Republic)*

c with '*by*' + a type of transport.
by bus/car/train

d with times + days.
at one o'clock *on Monday*

e with these phrases.
go to work/at home *most people*

Module 6

A Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable noun	Uncountable noun
eggs	milk
apples	butter
books	money
CDs	music

1 We can use countable nouns in the singular or plural.
*Have you got **a** cat? Do you like cats?*

2 Uncountable nouns do **not** have a plural.
Do you like classical ~~musics~~?

Note: A dictionary says if a noun is countable or uncountable.

REMEMBER!
a Bread, toast, cake, milk, fruit juice, water, coffee, tea ... *are all uncountable, but we can talk about:*

a piece of bread/toast/cake
a glass of milk/fruit juice/water
a cup of coffee/tea

*b We can also talk about **a** coffee (= a cup of coffee) and **two** teas ...*

B *There is* and *There are*

	singular	plural
Positive form	There's a cup.	There are six plates.
Negative form	There isn't a bottle of milk.	There aren't two cups.
Question form	Is there a glass of orange juice?	Are there six glasses?
Short answers	Yes, there is. No, there isn't.	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

C *some* and *any*

1 a We use *some* in the positive when we don't say exactly how many or how much.
*Have **some** grapes!*
*There's **some** soup and bread for lunch.*
*I'd like **some** carrots, please*

b *Some* = a small number/a small amount. Notice the difference:

some onions	*a lot of onions*
some money	*a lot of money*

2 We usually use *any* or *no* in negatives with plural and uncountable nouns.
*I haven**'t** got **any** money* = I've got **no** money
*There aren**'t any** e-mails.* = There are **no** e-mails
*There isn**'t any** time* = There's **no** time

3 We usually use *any* in questions with plurals and uncountables.
Have you got **any** brothers or sisters?
Are there **any** buses at night?
Is there **any** meat in this soup?

	singular countable noun	plural countable noun	uncountable noun
+	There's an apple.	There are some grapes.	There's some soup.
−	There isn't a bowl.	There aren't any glasses. There are no glasses.	There isn't any water. There's no water.
?	Is there a cinema?	Are there any shops?	Is there any money?

REMEMBER!
With plural and uncountable nouns.

a *We can also use some in these questions:*
Would you like some cheese/coffee/grapes?
Have you got some grapes/mineral water?

b *We usually use some in this question:*
Can I have some wine/cake/oranges?

D Questions with *how much?* and *how many?*

1 We use *how many* with countable plural nouns.
How many *brothers/children/oranges have you got?*
How many *cigarettes does Paul smoke every day?*

2 We use *how much* with uncountable nouns.
How much *rice/milk/money have we got?*
How much *coffee does Elena drink in a week?*

3 *How much/how many* and *there is/there are:*
We use *there are* with countable plural nouns.
We use *there is* with uncountable nouns.
A: ***How many teachers are there*** *in your school?*
B: ***There are*** *about twenty, I think.*

A: ***How much sugar is there*** *in this cake?*
B: *It's okay.* ***There's not much.***

REMEMBER!
We use how much *to ask about prices.*

How much is it/this/that?	**How much** are they/these/those?
How much does it cost?	**How much** do they cost?
It's £10.	*They're £50.*

Module 7

A Past Simple: *was* and *were*

Positive form	I/he/she/it you/we/they	was at home. were at home.
Negative form	I/he/she/it wasn't (= was not) you/we they weren't (= were not)	at school. at school.
Question form	Was I/he /she/it Were you/we/they	friendly?
Short answers	Yes, I/he/she/it was. Yes, you/we/they were.	No, he/she/it wasn't. No, you/we/they weren't.

REMEMBER!
I was born in 1985. NOT: ~~*I born in 1985.*~~ OR: ~~*I was borned in 1985.*~~

B Past Simple: regular and irregular verbs

1 Regular verbs

Usually we add *-ed* to the verb.
*I/you/he/she/it/we/they work**ed**, want**ed**, finish**ed**, listen**ed**, watch**ed**, play**ed***

Other spelling rules:

Verb	Rule	
Ends in -e (*live*)	+ *d*	*She lived in France.*
Ends in a consonant + vowel + consonant (*stop*)	double the final consonant	*He stopped work at 5.30.*
Ends in consonant + y (*study*)	Change *y* to *ied*	*I studied economics.*

2 Irregular verbs

Many common verbs have an irregular past form:
go – went, have – had, meet – met, know – knew.

► ***Verb list on page 149.***

We use the Past simple to talk about:
a a finished single action in the past.
My parents ***met*** *in 1960.*
The film ***started*** *at 7.30*

b a finished state in the past.
Kate ***had*** *a happy childhood*
We ***lived*** *in a small city.*

c a repeated action in the past.
She always ***telephoned*** *me on Monday*
They ***went*** *swimming every day.*

When we use the Past simple, we often **say** the time of the action: *in 1960, at 7.30, on Monday.*

C Past time phrases

1 *in*

in	+ year	*in 1999*
	+ decade	*in the 1980s*
	+ century	*in the 20th century*
	+ month	*in July*

2 *from ... to...*

I worked for the company **from** *1994* **to** *2000*
The lesson was **from** *half past six* **to** *eight.*

> ***REMEMBER***
> *We do not use a preposition (in, on, from, . .) with:*
>
> | | |
> |---|---|
> | *last* | We watched television **last** night. |
> | *yesterday* | Manuel phoned me **yesterday.** |

D Past time phrases with *last, yesterday* and *ago*

These time phrases are very common with the Past simple.

1 *yesterday* and *last*
I saw her **yesterday**. NOT ~~*on yesterday*~~
We went shopping **yesterday morning/afternoon**.
They went on holiday **last weekend**. NOT: ~~*at last weekend*~~
He phoned me **last night**

2 *ago* (= before now)
They got married six months ago.
I phoned you about three minutes ago.

E Ordinal numbers and dates

1st	→	first	11th	→	eleventh
2nd	→	second	12th	→	twelfth
3rd	→	third	13th	→	thirteenth
4th	→	fourth	20th	→	twentieth
5th	→	fifth	21st	→	twenty-first
6th	→	sixth	22nd	→	twenty-second
7th	→	seventh	30th	→	thirtieth
8th	→	eighth	33rd	→	thirty-third
9th	→	ninth	40th	→	fortieth
10th	→	tenth	100th	→	hundredth

We use ordinal numbers:

- for dates — *December 25th:* / *December the twenty-fifth.*
- for floors in a building: — *The classroom is on the third floor.*
- as an adjective: — *She's Paola's second wife* / *My first car was a Fiat Uno.*

Module 8

A Past simple: negative

I/you/he/she/it/ we/they	**didn't (= did not)**	start / come	at 10.00. / to the park.

> ***REMEMBER!***
> *We use* didn't + *the base form of the verb.*
> *Regular and irregular verbs are the same.*
>
> She **didn't go** shopping. NOT: ~~*She didn't went shopping.*~~

B Past simple questions

Question form

Did	you/he/she	walk to work today?
Did		sleep well?

Short answers

Yes, I/you/we/he	**did.**
No, I/you/we/he	**didn't**

> ***REMEMBER!***
> *We do not use the full verb in short answers*
>
> *Did you like Rome?* Yes, I **did** NOT: ~~*Yes, I liked.*~~
> No, I **didn't.** NOT: ~~*No, I didn't like.*~~

What			think of South Africa?
Where		you	live in Spain?
When		he	work there?
What time	did	Maria	go home?
Who		they	speak to?
Why			leave early?
How			travel?

Module 9

A Comparative forms of adjectives

1 When we compare two things we use *than.*
Sarah's older **than** *Hannah.*
London is more expensive **than** *Manchester.*

2 a With all one-syllable adjectives, we use *er* + *than.*
This car is cheaper than the other one.
Joe is taller than his father.

b With two-syllable adjectives that end in *y*, we change *y* to *ier* + *than.*
busy: ***I am busier than I was before.***
pretty: ***The old part of the town is prettier than the new part.***

c With other two-syllable adjectives and adjectives of three or more syllables, we use *more* + adjective + *than.*
Madonna is more famous than her husband.
This shop is more expensive than the other one.
Greek is more difficult than Latin.

3 Notice these irregular forms.
good: ***This road is better than it was before.***
bad: ***I feel worse today than I did yesterday.***

B Superlative forms of adjectives

We form superlatives with *the* + adjective + *est*.
*Kate is **the oldest** in the family*

or *the* + *most* + adjective.
*This is **the most expensive** restaurant in town.*

The rules are the same as with comparative forms.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Spelling rule
cheap	cheaper	the cheapest	most one syllable adjectives: + er /est
nice	nicer	the nicest	adjectives ending in e: + r/st
big	bigger	the biggest	adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: double the final consonant + er/est
easy	easier	the easiest	adjectives ending in y: change to -ier/iest
famous	more famous more expensive	the most famous the most expensive	most two syllable adjectives, and adjectives with three or more syllables: more/most + adjective
good bad	better worse	the best the worst	irregular adjectives

Module 10

A Present continuous

1 We use the Present continuous to talk about actions happening now.
*I'm **using** the computer at the moment.*
*Ali isn't here; he's **working**.*

... or around now.
*We're **staying** in Montevideo this week*
*I'm **reading** a really interesting book.*

Positive form	I'm he/she/it's you/we/they're	waiting.
Negative form	I'm not he/she/it isn't you/we/they aren't	playing.
Question form	Am I Is he/she/it Are you/we/they	working?
Short answers	Yes, I am. Yes, he/she/it is. Yes, you/we/they are.	No, I'm not. No, he/she/it isn't. No, you/we/they aren't.

2 Look at the spelling rules for the *-ing* form.

Verb	Rule	
Most verbs	add *-ing*	*He's flying to South Africa.*
Verbs ending with -e	take away the -e	*They're living in Beijing.*
Verbs ending with consonant + vowel + consonant	double the final consonant	*She's sitting here.*

3 Notice how we use the Present continuous with question words.

What *Where* Why Who	am I is she/he are you/we/they	doing? *going?* waiting? talking to?

B Present continuous and Present simple

1 We use the Present simple to talk about something that is always true.
*Laura **comes** from Rome I **don't speak** Russian*
We also use the Present simple to talk about habits and routines, often with words like *normally, usually, sometimes,* etc.
*We often **watch** a video on Friday night*
*Do you normally **wake** up early?*

2 We use the Present continuous to talk about something that is happening now or around now. Compare these pairs of sentences.
*Jan's **phoning** his girlfriend.* (= now)
*Jan **phones** his girlfriend about eight times a day.* (= habit)

*I'm **reading** a fantastic book at the moment.* (= in the present period)
*I **read** three or four books a week.* (= habit)

Module 11

A *can* and *can't* (for ability)

1 We use *can* to say we are able to do something.
*Peter **can** speak German very well*

2 We use *can't* to say we are not able to do something.
*My dog **can't** walk at the moment.*

REMEMBER!

a *We do not add an 's' with the he/she/it form.*
He can speak Turkish. NOT: He **cans** speak Turkish

b *We always use the base form after* can
She can dance salsa. NOT: She **can** dances salsa.

c *We do not use do or does to make the question form*
***Can you** play tennis?* NOT: ~~*Do you can play tennis?*~~

B Question words

1 One-word questions

What's *your name?*	*Irena.*
Where *do you come from?*	*Russia.*
When *did you come to England?*	*Two weeks ago.*
How *did you come here?*	*By plane.*
Which *do you prefer, London or Moscow?*	*Moscow!*
Why *do you like it better?*	*Because it's my home city!*

a We use *what* if there are many possible answers.
What's *your favourite colour?* *Blue.*

b We use *which* if there are only a few possible answers.
Which *is easier, Japanese, Chinese or English?* *English, I think!*

2 Compound (two-word) questions

a We can make compound questions with *what* and *which*.

What kind/sort/type *of food do you like?*	*Italian.*
What time *does the train leave?*	*At six thirty*
What colour *is your car?*	*Green.*
Which one *do you like best?*	*I really like the yellow one.*

b We can make compound questions with *how*.

How far *is your home from here?*	*About six kilometres.*
How often *do you have English classes?*	*Three times a week*
How long *are your lessons?*	*One and a half hours.*
How fast *is your computer?*	*Very fast!*
How much *bread have we got?*	*Not much.*
How many *cigarettes do you smoke?*	*About five a day.*
How old *is your daughter?*	*She was seven last week.*

REMEMBER
We use ***how many*** *for countable nouns and* ***how much*** *for uncountable nouns.*

A: How many people are there here? B: About 200.

A: How much time have we got? B: Only five minutes.

3 Question words and verb forms

We can use different verb forms with question words.

How was *your journey?*	*Very good, thank you.*
Which *city* ***did*** *you* ***like*** *the best?*	*Madrid.*
How many *names* ***can*** *you remember?*	*Anne, Susie, Tom and ...*
How far do *you* ***travel*** *every day?*	*About 100 kilometres.*

C Definite, indefinite and zero articles

1 Zero article

We use zero article (no article) with plural nouns or with uncountable nouns.
Jane loves ***children****.*
Meat *is good for you*

We use it to speak about things in general.

2 Indefinite article

We use *a/an* before a countable singular noun.
I'm staying in ***a*** *hotel in Bangkok.*

a/an = one, but we don't know which one,
or we use *a/an* when this is the first time we are speaking about something.

3 Definite article

We use *the* before nouns when it is clear that the speaker is talking about something specific or something which we know.

The children *are in bed.*	= the children in my family/my children;
The meat *is fantastic!*	= we know which meat, (the meat that I am eating now)
I'm going back to ***the hotel*** *soon*	= we know which hotel because we spoke about it before

Module 12

A Future intentions

1 *Going to* + verb

a We use *going to* + verb when we are talking about our plans or intentions.
We ***'re going to*** *get married next summer.*
Jane ***isn't going to*** *have a party this year.*

b We don't usually say *'going to go'* – we just use the Present continuous.
I'm going ~~to go~~ out with a big group of friends
I'm going ~~to go~~ shopping.

Positive form

I'm he /she 's you/we/they 're	going to	have a party next week.

Negative form

I'm not he /she isn't you/we/they aren't	going to	study tonight.

Question form

Am I Is he /she Are you/we/they	going to	see Karen tomorrow?

	Short answers				Short answers	
	I	am.		I'm	not.
Yes,	he/she	is.	No,	he/she	isn't.
	you/we/they	are.		you/we/they	aren't.

2 *Want to* + verb; *would like to* + verb

a We use *want* and *would like* to talk about our wishes.
Would like is usually more polite.
I ***want to*** *see the manager!* *I'****d like to*** *book a room, please.*

b In the negative we don't often use *wouldn't like to*. We prefer *don't want to*.
I ***don't want to*** *go out tonight* NOT: ~~*I wouldn't like to go out tonight*~~.

1 *Want to* + verb

Positive form

I/you/we/they	want to	eat
he/she/it	wants to	eat

Question form

Do you	want to	eat?
Does he		

Yes, I do	Yes, he does
No, I don't	No, he doesn't

Negative form

I/you/we/they	don't	want to	eat.
he/she /it	doesn't		

2 *Would like to* + verb

Positive form

I/you/he/she/it/we/they	'd like to	eat.

Negative form

I/you/he/she/it/we/they	wouldn't like to	eat.

Question form

Would	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	like to	eat?

B Future time expressions

These are some common expressions we use when we are talking about future plans and intentions:

I'm going to see Patricia	*today, tonight* *this .. morning/afternoon/evening/ weekend/month/year/summer* *tomorrow,* *tomorrow ... morning/afternoon/ evening/night* *next . week/month/year/summer*

C Suggestions with *let's, shall we, we could* + verb

Suggestion		Positive response	Negative response
Let's (= let us)		Good idea!	Oh, no! (+ reason)
Shall we	watch a video?	Yes, fine.	Sorry, but (+ reason)
We could	go to a club.	Yes, sure.	
Why don't we	go on holiday?	Yes, okay.	

D Offers with *shall I?* and *I'll* + verb

	Offer	Positive response	Negative response
Shall I	*order a pizza?*	*Good idea!*	*It's OK, thanks.* (+ reason)
I'll	*make some coffee.*	*Yes, please, if that's okay.* *Fine/okay/sure/ thanks.* *That's very kind of you.*	

Module 13

A Infinitive of purpose

We use infinitives to show why we do something.

I'm studying English ***to get*** *a better job.* (= because I want to get a better job.)

She went to the bank ***to change*** *some money.* (= because she wanted to change some money.)

B *might* and *will*: modal verbs for possibility

We use *might (not)* and *will (won't)* to say that something is possible or probable in the future.

	'll (= will)	go to university. (you think this will happen)
	might	go to university. (you think it's possible)
I/you/he/ she/you/they	might not	go to university. (you think it's less possible)
	won't (= will not)	go to university. (you think this will not happen)

REMEMBER

We don't use to *after* might *and* will.

It might rain. NOT ~~It might to rain.~~

Module 14

A Present perfect

1 We form the Present perfect with *has/have* + past participle.

a **Regular verbs**

Regular past participles are the same as the Past simple form (verb + *ed*)

I've ***finished*** *the housework.*

Also, *waited, phoned, used, tried,* etc.

b **Irregular verbs**

Irregular verbs have irregular past participles. (See Irregular verb list on page 149.)

I've ***spoken*** *to her today.*

Positive form

I/you/we/they	've (= *have*)	met Anne before.
he/she/it	's (= *has*)	

Negative form

I/you/we/they	haven't	met Anne before.
he/she/it	hasn't	

Question form

Have	I/you/we/they	met Anne before?
Has	he/she/it	

Short answers

Yes,	I/you/ we/they	have	No,	I/you/ we/they	haven't.
	he/she/it	has		he /she/it	hasn't.

2 We use the Present perfect to talk about something that happened in the past but is **connected to the present**.

a It happened in a present time period.
*I've **been** very busy **today**.*
*We've **had** two holidays **this year**.*

b It happened 'some time in my life up to now' (my life is not finished).
*She's **done** lots of different jobs.*
*I've **broken** my arm three times.*
We do not say exactly when these actions happened with the Present perfect.

B Time phrases with the Present perfect and Past simple

1 With the Present perfect, we do not say exactly when the action happened.

a We often use imprecise time words like *just, recently, already, never* or *ever* (= in your life).
*I've **just seen** Lucia*
*They've **recently bought** a new car.*
*I've already **had** my lunch.*
I've never met your brother
***Have** you **ever been** to Australia?*

b We can also use 'present' time words like *today, this week, this year,* etc.
*She's **started** a new job **this week**.*

c We also use *always* and *before* with the Present perfect.
*I've **always** wanted to go to India.*
*I've **heard** about him but I haven't met him before.*

2 We cannot use the Present perfect with precise past time phrases like *yesterday, last month, at eight o'clock, ten minutes ago,* etc. With past time words like this, we use the Past simple.
*I **went** shopping yesterday* NOT: ~~*I have been shopping yesterday.*~~
*I **got** up at seven o'clock.* NOT: ~~*I have got up at seven o'clock.*~~
*I **spoke** to Alex ten minutes ago.* NOT: ~~*I have spoken to Alex ten minutes ago.*~~

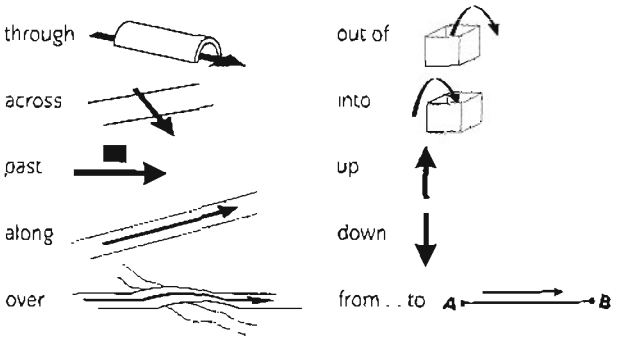
REMEMBER!
The verb *go* has two past participles *gone* and *been*.

a *gone* = gone but not returned
*Anna's **gone** shopping this morning.* (= she's at the shops now, she hasn't returned)

b *been* = gone and returned again.
*Anna's **been** shopping this morning.* (= she went to the shops but now she is back)

Module 15

A Prepositions of movement



B *have to* and *don't have to*

1 We use *have to* when it is necessary or obligatory to do something.
*You **have to** drive on the left in Britain.*

2 We use *don't have to* when it is not necessary to do something, but you can if you want.
*You **don't have to** come to the party if you don't want to.*

REMEMBER
*When it is **not** okay or it is prohibited to do something we use* **can't**.
You can't smoke in the classroom NOT: ~~*You don't have to smoke in the classroom.*~~

Positive form

I/you/we/they he/she /it	**have to** **has to**	leave

Negative form

I/you/we/they he/she/it	**don't** **doesn't**	**have to**	leave

Question form

Do **Does**	I/you/we/they he/she /it	**have to go?**

Short answers

Yes,	I/you/we/they he/she/it	**do.** **does.**
No,	I/you/we/they he/she/it	**don't.** **doesn't**

C *can* and *can't*

We use *can* when it is okay to do something.
*You **can** pay me tomorrow.*
*You **can** go home now.*

We use *can't* when it is not okay or it is prohibited to do something.
*You **can't** eat in here*
*We **can't** park here.*

MINI-CHECKS

Module 1

A Complete the table.

Country	Nationality
Russia	Russian
1 _____	British
Spain	2 _____
3 _____	Italian
4 _____	Japanese

B Complete with the correct form of *be*.

We're Italian.

5 I _____ nineteen years old.

6 They _____ my friends.

7 Claudia _____ on holiday.

8 _____ you from Manchester?

C Make these sentences negative.

I'm married. *I'm not married.*

9 Emily's a student.
_____

10 My parents are from Barcelona.
_____

11 You're in my class.
_____

D Look at the answers. Write the questions.

My name's Tomas. *What's your name?*

12 No, I'm not. I'm single.
_____

13 I'm thirty. _____

14 I'm a nurse. _____

15 It's 07611 993993.
_____

E Write the jobs.

16 m _ s _ c i _ n

17 w _ i _ e _

18 e _ g _ n _ e _

F Which word takes *an*?

19 tourist student address country

G Put in the capital letters.

20 i'm from turkey and ahmed's from dubai.

/20

Module 2

A Put the family words in pairs.

mother	son
1 sister	brother
2 aunt	uncle
3 niece	father
4 daughter	nephew

B Match the pictures to the words.

5 a wallet ☐ and a bottle of water ☐

6 stamps ☐ and coins ☐

7 glasses ☐ and a camera ☐

8 *a brush* ☐ *and a credit card* ☐

9 a watch ☐ and a diary ☐

C Complete with the correct form of *have got*.

10 Tania _____ a new mobile.

11 _____ (you) all your things?

12 We _____ (not) a dog now.

13 They _____ five children.

14 _____ your brother
_____ a new computer?

15 My sister _____ (not) a job.

D Put in the apostrophe (').

16 These tissues are Jennys.

E Choose the correct word.

17 How/What/Who do you say this in English?

18 Who/Where/What page are we on?

19 How/Who/What do you spell 'beautiful'?

20 How/What/Where does this mean?

/20

Module 3

A Complete the gaps with a verb.

1 Mark and Karina _____ to school on the bus.

2 What time do you _____ dinner?

3 Do your children _____ English?

4 What time do they _____ up in the morning?

5 I don't _____ tea or coffee.

6 The shops _____ at about nine o'clock in the morning.

B Complete the gaps with *do*, *don't* or – (no word).

7 '_____ you work in an office?'
'No, I _____ . I _____ work in a restaurant.'

8 'Where _____ you live?'
'We _____ live in the city centre.'

9 'I _____ have breakfast at home, I normally _____ a snack at work at about ten o'clock.'

10 '_____ you read the newspaper every day?'
'Yes, I _____ .'

C Write the missing letters to make places.

11 o f _ _ _ _ 13 c i _ _ m _

12 b _ _ c h 14 c _ _ y c _ _ t _ _

D Write the times.

15 _____

16 _____

17 _____

E Choose the correct preposition.

18 We have lunch in / at / on about half past twelve.

19 I get up late in / at / on Sundays.

20 They work in / at / on night.

/20

Module 4

A Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct form.

1 Do you _____ a lot of books and magazines?

2 On Saturday Jack _____ to the cinema with his friends.

3 I often _____ to the radio in the evening.

4 My husband never _____ TV.

5 She usually _____ dinner at about seven o'clock in the evening.

6 My sister often _____ shopping at lunchtime.

7 A lot of children _____ football at school.

8 She never _____ her homework.

B Correct the mistakes.

9 My brother live in Berlin.

_____

10 Where are you work?

_____

11 What does study Erica?

_____

12 I go never to bed early.

_____

13 He doesn't speak often English.

_____

14 Is your wife work for a big company?

_____

15 My mother don't like spiders.

_____

C Put the words in order.

16 drink / want a / you / Do ?

_____

17 three / I'd / , please / like / coffees

_____

D Circle the odd one out.

18 running swimming shopping

19 cooking reading doing housework

20 eating driving drinking

/20

Module 6

A Circle the odd one out.

1 melons carrots grapes oranges

2 fish chicken hamburgers rice

3 jam lemons chocolate biscuits

4 coffee milk tea noodles

B Complete with *is* or *are*.

5 _____ there any sugar in this coffee?

6 Oh good! There _____ noodles in the soup!

7 There _____ an apple in my bag.

8 There _____ some fruit in that bowl.

C Choose the correct alternative.

9 I've got a / some / any / no magazine for you.

10 Don't eat a / some / any / no sweets before lunch!

11 I want to listen to a / some / any / no music.

12 I'm sorry, but there are a / some / any / no strawberries today.

D Correct the mistakes.

13 How many son have you got?

_____

14 How much waters do you drink every day?

_____

15 How many money do you want?

_____

16 How much people are there in your office?

_____

E Put the words in the box in the correct place.

'd much can the

17 Hello, I have a coke, please?

18 I like some tea, please.

19 Can I have bill, please?

20 How is that?

/20

Module 7

A Complete the dialogue with the correct form of *was* or *were*.

A: Where (1) _____ you last night? I phoned you three times!

B: Sorry, I (2) _____ at home. I (3) _____ at Keri's birthday party.

A: Oh. (4) _____ it good?

B: Yes, but there (5) _____ many people there. Only four of us!

B Correct the mistakes.

6 My husband worked for ICI for 1998 to 2004.

_____

7 We left Shanghai on 2002.

_____

8 People first used computers in twentieth century.

_____

9 My birthday is on January the twenty two.

_____

10 I watched television the last night.

_____

11 The Berlin Wall came down in 1980s.

_____

12 We went to Chicago I was fifteen.

_____

C Write the past forms of the verbs.

13 make _____

14 write _____

15 become _____

16 buy _____

17 take _____

D Complete the gaps with the correct form of the verbs.

18 I _____ (get) married last year.

19 I _____ (go) to college last year.

20 I _____ (start) a new job last week.

/20

Module 8

A Write the types of film.

1 s_____ f_____
l_____ s_____

2 c_____y
c_____n

3 h_____r film
a_____n film

B Complete the adjectives.

4 f r _ _ _ t _ _ _ ng

5 e x _ _ t _ _ g

6 v _ _ l _ _ t

7 i n t _ _ _ _ t _ _ _

8 e n j _ _ _ b l _

C Make the sentences negative.

9 Meg fell in love with Tom.

_____

10 I slept very well last night.

_____

11 She gave me the parcel.

_____

12 The camera cost $500.

_____

13 He found his keys.

_____

D Write the questions.

14 'Where _____ on holiday?'
'We went to New Zealand.'

15 'How _____ there?'
'By plane.'

16 'What _____ there?'
'We went horse riding and we did lots of shopping.'

17 '_____ a good time?'
'Yes, we had a great time!'

E Correct the mistakes.

18 Do you want go to see a movie?

_____

19 Let meet at seven o'clock.

_____

20 Why we don't go to that new café?

_____

/20

Module 9

A Complete the sentences comparing two hotels.

1 The Park is _____ (big) The Spa.

2 The Spa is _____ (small) The Park.

3 The Park is _____ (cheap) The Spa.

4 The Spa is _____ (expensive) The Park.

5 The Park is _____ (good) The Spa for children.

6 The Spa is _____ (bad) The Park for children.

B Write the superlative form.

7 hot _____

8 cold _____

9 popular _____

10 friendly _____

11 famous _____

C Complete the shops.

12 b _ _ c h _ _ '_

13 c _ _ t h _ _ s_ _ _

14 h _ _ _ d r _ _ _ _ 's

15 l _ c _ l s _ o _

D Correct the mistakes.

16 You take credit cards?

_____

17 Have you this in blue?

_____

18 How much is?

_____

19 Can I have one those, please?

_____

20 What time do close?

_____

/20

Module 11

A Complete the missing letters to make animals or natural features.

1 m _ _ n t _ _ n

2 i _ s _ _ t

3 h _ m _ _ b _ _ _ _ g

4 b _ _ d

5 e _ _ t h

B Correct the mistakes.

6 Do you can play golf?

_____

7 She cans understand Chinese.

_____

8 I can't cooking.

_____

C Choose the correct alternative.

9 How much / How many money have you got?

10 How far / How fast can you translate?

11 Which / Where continent is the biggest?

12 What / Who is your favourite actor?

D Write the numbers.

13 thirty-three point three _____

14 four hundred thousand _____

15 two thousand and eight _____

16 fourteen metres sixty-two centimetres _____

E Put *a/an* or *the* in the correct place in the sentences.

17 Sam loves dogs but he doesn't like dog next-door.

_____

18 Money is problem for most people.

_____

19 I can see moon.

_____

20 There's pen in my bag.

_____

/20

Module 12

A Complete the gaps with one word.

A: What are you (1) _____ to do when you finish university?

B: I (2) _____ going to have a long holiday!

A: And after that?

B: I (3) _____ to find a good job with a computer company. I'd (4) _____ to work in Japan or maybe China. How about you? What (5) _____ you want to do?

A: I'd really like (6) _____ travel, maybe to South America.

B Cross out the verb that does not go with the noun.

7	do / make / hate	the housework
8	go to / go / enjoy	shopping
9	see / watch / visit	an exhibition
10	make / have / go to	a party

C Put the words in the correct place in the sentences.

shall	's	about	'll	don't

11 I make some coffee for us.

12 A: I telephone Pete?

B: Yes, please, if that's OK.

13 Let have some chocolate.

14 Why we stay at home tonight?

15 How watching that new DVD?

D What's the weather like?

16 _____

17 _____

18 _____

19 _____

20 _____

/20

Module 13

A Write the school subjects.

1 You study computers.

2 You study countries and places

3 You study things that happened in the past.

4 You study money and finance.

5 You study books by great writers.

B Complete with the words. (You may need to change the tense.)

apply	course	degree	get
money	pass	train	

6 Dan's really happy because he _____ all his exams

7 If you want to be a doctor you need to get a _____ in medicine.

8 After Paula finishes college she wants to _____ as a chef.

9 Yasuko _____ for a job in the New York office, but she didn't get it.

10 You need to work harder if you want to _____ good marks.

11 Luciano's doing a really interesting design _____ .

12 Most actors don't earn very much _____ .

C Choose the best alternative.

13 We're not going out because the news says it might / won't rain.

14 When I'm 30, he will / might be 65.

15 Don't wait for Jack. He said he might / might not come.

16 I'm sure the traffic won't / might not be bad on a Sunday morning.

D Make sentences.

17 I / going / the supermarket / buy a few things

_____

18 We / go / the hospital last weekend / visit Rosa

_____

19 I / meet / my boss / talk about my new job

_____

20 Chris / going / the bank / get some money

_____

/20

Module 14

A Correct the mistakes with the Present perfect.

1 Leila haven't been to work this week because she's ill.

2 Are the others gone home?

3 I broken my arm.

4 Anita just has called – can you call her back?

5 It hasn't rain this week.

B Choose the correct alternative.

6 We have been / went away last weekend.

7 I haven't spoken / didn't speak to Mum this week – is she okay?

8 When have you started / did you start your new job?

9 I never sent / have never sent a text message in my life.

10 My grandmother has been / was born in 1935.

C Complete with the verbs.

leave	make	post	send	take

11 Just a minute – I need to _____ a quick phone call.

12 If I'm not at home you can _____ a message with my dad.

13 You look really funny. Just a minute, I'm going to _____ a photo of you.

14 I'm just going out to _____ an important letter.

15 It's Alice's birthday on Sunday don't forget to _____ her a card.

D Put the telephone phrases in the correct order.

16 there / is / Ed?

_____

17 he's / sorry / here / not

_____

18 Sonia / that / is?

_____

19 to / I / Ahmed / please / speak / can / to?

_____

20 to / him / me / call / ask / can / you / please?

_____

/20

TAPESCRIPTS

Module 0

Recording 6

a twenty-five
b eighty-eight
c fifty
d nineteen
e ninety
f a hundred
g thirteen
h seventy-five
i thirty
j twenty-three
k seventeen
l ninety-nine

Recording 9

1 Listen and repeat: eight.
2 Open your book at page 36.
3 Put your book on your desk.
4 Look at the picture on page 52.
5 Write your name in your notebook.
6 Put your pen on your desk.

Module 1

Recording 3

Hamburg is in Germany.
Bangkok is the capital of Thailand.
San Diego is in the USA.
Liverpool is in Britain.
Warsaw is the capital of Poland.
St Petersburg is in Russia.
Beijing is the capital of China.
Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina.
Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
Barcelona is in Spain.
Rome is the capital of Italy.
Monterrey is in Mexico.

Recording 6

a The currency in Australia is the Australian dollar – not the American dollar, of course. In Japan it's the yen, and in France, and other countries like Germany, Italy and Spain it's the euro. In Turkey it's the Turkish lire.
b Stamp number one is from Thailand, number two is from Poland, number three is from Britain and stamp number four is from Egypt.
c Number 1: Mercedes-Benz is a German company, a famous German car company. Number 2: Hyundai is a Korean car company. Number 3: Sony is a famous Japanese electrical company, and number 4: Gucci is a famous Italian fashion company.
d All of these words mean 'hello'. Number one is in Spanish, number two is in Arabic, number three is in Russian, number four is in Chinese and number five is in Italian.
e Nicole Kidman is from Sydney in Australia. Penélope Cruz is from Madrid in Spain, but her home is in Hollywood. Jennifer Lopez is American. She's from New York, but her family are from Puerto Rico.

Recording 7

1 Hello my name's Andrei Vasilev. I'm nineteen years old and I'm from Moscow. I'm a medical student at Moscow University, and I'm not married.
2 Hello, my name's Marisol Martinez, and I'm from Valencia in Spain. Today I'm at Heathrow airport but I'm not here on holiday. I'm here on business. I work for an American company in Spain. I'm thirty-five years old and I'm married with two children.
3 Hi, my name's Toshi Sato and I'm twenty-two years old. I'm on holiday in Europe with my friend Mariko. We're students at Tokyo University. We aren't married.

Recording 8

I'm on holiday. You're here. He's from Italy. She's single.
It's here. We're students. They're from Tokyo.
I'm not married. You aren't on holiday. He isn't American.
She isn't here. It isn't German. We aren't married.
They aren't here on business.

Recording 11

A: Excuse me, can I ask you a few questions? It's for market research.
B: Yes, of course.
A: Thank you. Okay, question number one, what's your full name?
B: It's William Anthony Barker.
A: Okay, Mr Barker, and where are you from?
B: I'm from Wellington in New Zealand.
A: Lovely, are you here on holiday?
B: Yes, I am.
A: Great. Next question. How old are you? Twenty to twenty-four, or twenty-five to thirty?
B: I'm twenty-six.
A: Great, so that's twenty-five to thirty then, and er, what's your job?
B: I'm a musician; a rock musician.
A: Wow, fantastic! Okay, and er, are you married?
B: No, I'm not. I'm single.
A: Okay, single. Great.
A: Okay and the last two questions. What's your address in England?
B: It's 25 Manor Road, London N10.
A: What's your telephone number?
B: It's 020 7535 3555.
A: Okay, well thank you very much Mr Barker, and have a good holiday in London.
B: Thank you. Bye.
A: Bye.

Recording 12

1 A: Are you on holiday?
B: Yes, I am.
2 A: Are you married?
B: No, I'm not.
3 A: Are you American?
B: No, I'm not.
4 A: Are you here on business?
B: Yes, I am.
5 A: Is your brother a student?
B: Yes, he is.
6 A: Is he from London?
B: No, he isn't.
7 A: Is Monica here?
B: No, she isn't.
8 A: Are your parents from New York, too?
B: No, they aren't.

Recording 13

Conversation 1

A = HOTEL RECEPTIONIST, B = GUEST

A: Hello, can I help you?
B: Hello, yes. I've got a reservation. My name's Ream.
A: How do you spell that?
B: R-E-A-M.
A: R-E-A-M. Just a minute. Mrs Emma Ream?
B: That's right.
A: Yes, that's fine. Okay, Mrs Ream. Can you sign here?

B: Okay.
A: And what's your passport number, please?
B: Erm, just a minute. Yes. it's erm, 201-758 ...
A: 201-758- ... yes?
B: 491.
A: 201-758-491. Okay, thank you very much. Here's your key.
B: What's my room number?
A: You're in room 615. The lift's over there.
B: 615. Okay, thank you.

Conversation 2

A = BANK CLERK, B = CUSTOMER

A: Okay, so I need a few details. First, what's your full name?
B: It's Shireen Rahman. Shireen's S-H-I-R ...
A: Yes?
B: -double E-N.
A: S-H-I-R double E-N ... Shireen, and how do you spell your surname?
B: Rahman. That's R-A-H-M-A-N.
A: Okay, great. And what's your address?
B: 14 Abbot's Road, Colchester, CO2 7CK.
A: Okay, and what's your home phone number?
B: It's 01206 879879.
A: Okay ... 01206 879879, and your work number?
B: 01206 765456.
A: Lovely. And what's your e-mail address?
B: It's s.rahman@firstserve.com.
A: And what's your nationality? British?
B: Yes.
A: And are you married?
B: No, I'm not.
A: And what's your occupation?
B: I'm a medical student.
A: Okay great, and last question. How old are you?
B: I'm twenty-three.
A: Fine, that's everything ...

Recording 14

1 What's your surname?
2 How do you spell that?
3 What's your first name?
4 How do you spell that?
5 What nationality are you?
6 Where are you from?
7 What's your address?
8 What's your home phone number?
9 What's your work number?
10 What's your mobile number?
11 How old are you?
12 What's your job?

Module 2

Recording 3

a What's this in English?
b Is this your pen?
c Is that your brother?
d This is my friend Ben.
e These are my parents.
f That's my teacher over there.
g Who are those children?
h Are these your books?

Recording 6

a Have you got your keys with you?
b Have you got an English dictionary?
c Have you got a packet of chewing gum in your bag?
d Have you got a credit card?
e Have you got a cheque book with you?
f Have you got a diary in your bag?
g Have you got a bottle of water with you?
h Have you got a mobile phone?
i Have you got a watch?
j Have you got a camera?

Recording 7

Kemal This is my car and I love it! It is a German car and it is my favourite colour, silver. It is really, really fast, really comfortable and it has got a fantastic CD player – it is just great.
Lisa My favourite thing is not really a thing, it is our pet cat, Billy. We have got four cats in our family, but Billy is my favourite. He is black and white and he has got beautiful green eyes. He is not very friendly with other people but he loves me!

Recording 9

1 Steve Tyler, the guitarist from the rock group Aerosmith, is Liv Tyler's father.
2 Lynne is David Beckham's sister. He's got two sisters, but they aren't famous.
3 Goldie Hawn is Kate Hudson's mother. They are both very famous actresses.
4 Prince William is Queen Elizabeth's grandson. He's Princess Diana's son.

Recording 10

My name's Alex, or Alejandro in Spanish. My family are from Mexico, but we live in London. I'm eighteen and I'm an economics student at London university.
This is my family: my mum, Elena. She's forty-one, and my dad, Enrique. He's fifty-three. He's got a computer business here in London. Then this is my sister, Beatriz. She's at school. I've also got a little brother, Lucas, he's only three. He's really great ... really, really funny.
This is my mum's sister, Lourdes, I think she's about thirty-six or thirty-seven. She's a really big lawyer in Mexico. She's very clever, I think. She hasn't got any children ... she isn't married. And this is my dad's brother, Roberto. He's a businessman. He's got four or five shops in Mexico City. I think he's quite rich. His wife's name's Isabella. She's a Spanish teacher. She's really nice – really funny, and they've got two children. Bella's about six, I think, and Mateo's four.

Recording 12

Excuse me, how do you say this word?
How do you spell that?
What does this word mean?
What's the English word for this?
Excuse me, what page are we on?

Can you say that again, please?
Can you write it on the board, please?
Can you play the recording again, please?

I don't know.
I don't understand.
I don't remember.
Yes, of course.

Recording 14

1 That thing over there.
2 Those three things.
3 Thank you for those things.
4 It's this Thursday.
5 This Thursday's fine.
6 That's the teacher over there.
7 It's three thirty-three.
8 There are thirteen of those things.

Module 3

Recording 2

a Do you live in a big city?
b Do you go to English classes?
c Do you live with your parents?
d Do you work long hours?
e Do you speak Russian?
f Do you eat in restaurants a lot?
g Do you study at university?
h Do you drink tea?

Recording 5

N = NICKY, J = JEFF

N: When do shops open and close in Australia?
J: They open at about nine and close at about five or half past five, except supermarkets ... they close about twelve o'clock at night.
N: And what about pubs and restaurants – what time do they close?
J: On Friday and Saturday they close at about one or two o'clock in the morning.
N: So what time do people start work?
J: Most people start work at about nine and they finish at about five.
N: And do they go home for lunch?
J: No, they eat a sandwich in the park or have lunch in a café.
N: What time do children go to school?
J: Um, they start school about half past eight and finish at about half past three.
N: So what do people do at the weekend?
J: In my city, Sydney most people go to the beach.
N: And do most people live in flats or houses?
J: In the city centre, most people live in flats or apartments, we say, but outside people live in houses with gardens and a lot of people have got swimming pools in their gardens.

Recording 6

1 In Los Angeles, it's nine o'clock in the morning.
2 In São Paulo, it's one o'clock in the afternoon.
3 In London, it's four o'clock in the afternoon.
4 In Moscow, it's eight o'clock in the evening.
5 In Tokyo, it's one o'clock in the morning.
6 In Auckland, it's four o'clock in the morning.

Recording 8

1 A: ... because, you see, I don't usually have breakfast. I'm never hungry in the morning.
B: Really? I love breakfast. I have a really big breakfast every day! I love to start with ...
2 C: ... so anyway because I'm thirty this year I want to ...
D: Are you thirty this year? Really? Me too! It's horrible, isn't it!
3 E: Are you married?
F: No. How about you?
E: No, me neither.
4 G: So do you eat meat?
H: No, I don't. How about you?
G: Yes, I eat a little bit, but not much.
5 I: Yeah, and I'm really lucky. I've got a lovely flat in the city centre, just near the station ... and I live with some friends ...
J: How fantastic. I still live with my parents, in Kingston. Do you know where that is ...?
6 K: So where are you from?
L: I'm from South Africa, Durban. You're from Argentina, aren't you?
K: Well Chile, actually, Santiago.
7 M: ... because I haven't got any brothers and sisters, you see, I'm an only child.
N: Yeah, me too. Do you like being an ...?

Recording 9

address, business, cousin, bottle, office, married, holiday, normally, waitress, camera, wallet, dinner, parents, tissues

Module 4

Recording 1

Actress Cameron Diaz appears in many films, but she never watches them. The actress hates TV and doesn't have one in her home.
Pop singer Britney Spears loves dolls. She's got hundreds of dolls – the most expensive one cost $500!
In his films, actor Harrison Ford is a man of action – but at home he likes ordinary things. For example, he loves doing housework!
We all know that Superman flies everywhere, but the actor in the TV series, Dean Cain, never travels by plane – he's frightened of flying.
Actor Johnny Depp plays heroes in films, but in real life there is one thing that he is very frightened of: clowns. He hates their faces.
As for film director Woody Allen, he says he hates spiders, dogs, children, small rooms, crowds ... and lots of other things, too!

Recording 2

1 He likes housework.
2 She loves dolls.
3 She hates TV.
4 She has a lot of dolls.
5 He never goes on planes.
6 He doesn't like flying.
7 She doesn't watch TV.
8 He doesn't like dogs.
9 He doesn't like crowds.

Recording 3

a She **likes** London.
b He never **watches** TV.
c He **loves** football.
d She **hates** spiders.
e It **opens** early.
f It **closes** late.
g It **starts** at two o'clock.
h It **finishes** today.
i She **understands** English.
j He **goes** to bed late.
k He **does** the housework.
l She **studies** economics.

Recording 8

pens, cousins, boxes, flats, misses, hates, enjoys, waits

Module 5

Recording 1

(answers only)

a 59
b 740
c 100,000,000
d 5
e 77,000,000
f 8
g 9,000,000
h 1,000,000
i 3
j 500,000

Recording 2

Well, she can't take a taxi because she's only got $25 and it costs $35, so that's no good, she can't do that. Mmm, can she take the subway to the airport? Mmm. No, she can't, because it takes ninety minutes and she hasn't got ninety minutes, so not that one.

What about this one? She walks through Central Park, that takes twenty minutes. Then she takes the subway, that takes an hour, and then the Airtrain takes twelve minutes. No, she can't do that because she hasn't got enough time, so that one's no good.

And what about this one? The subway takes five minutes, the bus takes an hour and ... which one can she catch? Okay, she can take the bus at twenty past three and it takes an hour so that's twenty past four, that's fine. What about money? The subway costs $2 and the bus costs $13 so that's $15. Yes, she can pay for that, okay. So yes, number four's the only one that she can do.

Recording 3

1 You can't take the bus.
2 Can we take a train?
3 Can I park here?
4 We can walk.
5 They can wait over there.
6 You can go by car.
7 We can't drive there.
8 You can take the ferry.
9 You can't ride your bicycle up there.
10 Can you fly there?

Recording 4

G = GINA, C = CARL

G: Can you travel by tram?
C: No, you can't. We haven't got trams in New York.
G: Can you smoke in the subway?
C: No, you can't. You can't smoke in the stations or the trains.
G: Can you eat on a train?
C: Yes, you can. People eat snacks and even hamburgers on the trains.
G: Can you find a taxi easily?
C: It depends on the time of day. For example, it's not easy to find a taxi in midtown Manhattan between five and six o'clock in the evening, but at other times it's usually okay.
G: Can you have five people in a taxi?
C: No, you can't. The maximum number is four.
G: Can you drive at sixty kilometres an hour?
C: No, you can't. The maximum speed in the city is thirty miles an hour, that's about forty-eight kilometres an hour.
G: Can you ride a bicycle safely?
C: It depends. You can ride safely in Central Park and in some other areas but not in midtown Manhattan. The traffic is bad there.
G: Can you eat in a restaurant at midnight?
C: It depends on the restaurant. Not many restaurants are open at midnight.
G: Can you smoke in a restaurant?
C: No, you can't. You can't smoke in a restaurant or a coffee shop or any eating place.

Recording 5

Passengers Amos and Tenson please proceed to gate 34 immediately. Passengers Amos and Tenson to gate 34.
This is the last call for Gate 6. Final call for Gate 6.
Flight number AA100: please check in at desk 4. That's flight AA100 to check in at desk 4.
Flight number 6143 to Bahrain now boarding at gate number 12. That's flight 6143 boarding at gate 12.
Will Eva Goodwin please return to security? That's Eva Goodwin to security.
Flight number AA100 for London has been delayed by approximately one hour. That's flight number AA100 delayed by one hour because of weather conditions in the UK.
This is the final call for passenger Zhang Chen flying to Hong Kong. Will passenger Zhang Chen please proceed immediately to Gate 14?
Flight AA100 to London now boarding at Gate 12. Flight AA100 boarding at Gate 12.

Recording 6

Passengers for Berlin are requested to check in at Desk number 3. Passengers for Berlin, check in at Desk 3.
Transit passengers arriving on flight AA100 and travelling to Cairo or Milan, please go to the transit desk. Passengers for Cairo or Milan, please go to the transit desk.
Flight number AI264 to Mumbai now boarding at Gate 22.
Flight AI264 to Mumbai boarding at Gate 22.
This is a final call for passenger Karen Davis. Will passenger Karen Davis please proceed immediately to gate 12 where her flight is boarding? The last call for Karen Davis for Flight BA0572 to Milan. Please go to gate 12.

Recording 10

P = PASSENGER, C = CLERK

Conversation 1
P: Hello, a single to the airport, please.
C: The Heathrow Express?
P: Yes. How much is it?
C: £15.00
P: Here you are.
C: Thank you. It leaves from platform 7 every fifteen minutes.
P: When is the next one?
C: At 5.40.
P: How long does it take?
C: About fifteen minutes. That train arrives at five to six.
P: Thanks.

Conversation 2
P: A return to Oxford, please.
C: When do you want to come back?
P: Tonight.
C: OK ... that's £23.50.
P: Thank you. Can I pay by credit card?
C: Yes. Thank you. Sign there, please.
P: Which platform is it?
C: The next one is on platform 12 at 9.36.
P: And what time does it get to Oxford?
C: It arrives at 10.41.
P: Thank you.

Consolidation Modules 1–5

Recording 2

Conversation 1
A: Hello, Irish Rail Enquiries, Anna speaking.
B: Hello. Can you give me information about trains from Belfast to Dublin?
A: When are you travelling?
B: Tomorrow. What time is the first train in the morning?
A: The first train is at six thirty.
B: And what time does it arrive in Dublin?
A: Eight forty.
B: How much is it?
A: Single or return?
B: Single.
A: £21.
B: Thank you.
A: You're welcome.

Conversation 2
This is London Zoo. Our offices are closed at present and no officer is available. General information on the zoo follows. (pause)
The zoo is open every day from ten a.m. to five thirty p.m. Admission for adults is £10, and for children from seven to fourteen it's £8. Children under seven are free. The nearest underground station is Camden Town which is only ten minutes' walk away. If you come by ...

Conversation 3
C: What time is the football on?
D: It starts at seven.
C: And when does it finish?
D: About 9–9.30. It depends.
C: Oh no! I want to watch a film at nine o'clock!

Module 6

Recording 1

a There's an apple.
b There are a lot of grapes.
c There are five sausages.
d There's a lot of toast.
e There's some tea.
f There are six bread rolls.
g There are no bananas.
h There's no yoghurt.

Recording 2

Kemal Well, I usually have breakfast at home before I go to work. I always have tea, black tea, maybe two or three glasses. And I have cheese and eggs and tomatoes, and in Turkey we have fantastic bread so I usually have bread with butter and jam, and sometimes I have yoghurt, too.
Mi-Kyung I always have breakfast with my family. We usually have white rice, and we have Kim-chi. We cannot live without Kim-chi! Kim-chi is a traditional dish of mixed Korean vegetables. It's very hot and spicy.
Dimitry Well, for breakfast, when I have time, I have tea, usually, black tea with lemon and lots of sugar. Never with milk. Then I have bread and cold meat and some cucumber as well. And then I sometimes have a small cake or some biscuits to finish.
Sonia In Brazil, we have very good tropical fruit, guava, mango and things like that, and we always have fruit for our breakfast – also we have coffee, of course, everybody knows in Brazil we have very good coffee, and maybe bread and jam.
José I don't usually have breakfast. I don't have time because I go to work very early about seven o'clock in the morning, so I just have a cup of coffee for breakfast, in a café with my wife Anita. But I usually stop work for a snack at about eleven, half past eleven and go to a café near my office. I have another cup of coffee and a nice big piece of tortilla – Spanish omelette made with potatoes and eggs – it's really delicious.

Recording 3

1 Eat some fruit.
2 Don't eat any biscuits.
3 Try some melon.
4 Have some tea.
5 Don't have any chocolate.
6 Drink some water.
7 Don't drink any coffee.
8 Eat some bread.
9 Try some water.
10 Don't have any sugar.

Recording 4

There are two women in the picture, and a man and a small boy. I think one of the women is the boy's mother. I think it's a Carnival because the little boy has got a fantastic hat with yellow feathers. He looks great! And there's a young man on the right of the picture. He's got some drums ... three drums. I can see a lot of food on the table on the left of the picture. There's some soup, yes a big pot of soup and there's some rice, a big plate of rice. There's also a plate of prawns. There are some knives, forks and spoons on the table.

Recording 6

Conversation 1
A: Can I take your order, please?
B: Yes, can I have two Super King-Size burgers, please?
A: Two Super King-Size, yeah?
B: With large fries ...
A: Anything to drink with that?
B: Yes, two lemonades, please.
A: Eat in or take away?
B: Sorry?
A: Do you want it to eat here or take away?
B: Oh, eat here, please.
A: Right, that's £8.50, please.

Conversation 2
A: Would you like anything else? Some more coffee?
B: No, thanks. Can we have the bill, please?
A: OK, so it's two coffees and a piece of chocolate cake.
B: That's right.
A: So that's £3.70 for the coffees and £2.90 for the cake. That's £6.60 altogether, please.
B: £6.60. Five, six, seven, there you are. Keep the change.
A: Oh, thank you.
B: That's all right. Goodbye.
A: Bye.

Conversation 3
A: Perfect Pizza, good evening.
B: Yes, I'd like to order a pizza, to be delivered please.
A: All right. What would you like?
B: The one with all the different kinds of cheese. I haven't got a menu, what's the name of it?
A: Right, that's the Cheese Supreme.
B: That's it.
A: And is that regular, large or extra large?
B: How much is the extra large?
A: The regular is £7.60, the large is £10.60 and the extra large is £12.60.
B: Oh ... the large Cheese Supreme, please.
A: Anything else?
B: Yeah, a litre bottle of diet lemonade, please.
A: Right.
B: How much is that altogether?
A: That's £10.60 for the pizza, £1.25 for the drink so that's £11.85 altogether.
B: Okay.
A: All right, what's the address?
B: It's 28 Southlands Road.

Recording 8

Can I have two burgers, please?
Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
Can I have a glass of water, please?
Can I have the bill, please?

I'd like to order a pizza, please.
I'd like a large one, please.
I'd like a diet lemonade, please.
I'd like another coffee, please.

Module 7

Recording 1

1 John F Kennedy was President of the United States in the 1960s – from 1960 until his death in 1963.
2 Marie Curie was Polish. She was born in Warsaw, the capital of Poland, but she lived a lot of her life in Paris.
3 Laurel and Hardy were comedians and film stars. Their first film was in 1926.
4 The Beatles were all from Liverpool. They were school friends there.
5 From the age of about thirty Beethoven was deaf, but he wasn't born deaf.
6 Mao Ze Dong was born in 1893. He was leader of China from 1949 to 1976.
7 Tolstoy, Dostoyevsky and Chekhov were all Russian writers. Tolstoy's most famous books were *Anna Karenina* and *War and Peace*.
8 Galileo Galilei was an Italian mathematician and scientist. He was born in the sixteenth century.

Recording 2

a He was born in New York.
b Where were you born?
c He wasn't French.
d They weren't from London.
e She wasn't happy.
f They were very late.
g You were right.
h He wasn't in.
i They were sorry.
j You weren't ready.

Recording 3

a 2006
b 1985
c 1990
d 1989
e 1878
f 1914
g 1804
h 1917
i 2030

Recording 4

a The Beatles were first popular in the 1960s.
b Napoleon I was Emperor of France from 1804 to 1815.
c Bill Clinton was President of the USA in the 90s.
d William Shakespeare was born in the sixteenth century.
e The Russian Revolution was in 1917.
f The first landing on the moon was in 1969.
g The Second World War was from 1939 to 1945.
h Mozart was born in the eighteenth century.
i Madonna's first hit single was in the 80s.
j Leonardo da Vinci was born in the fifteenth century.

Recording 6

worked, studied, arrived, loved, needed, waited, believed, lived, wanted, liked, decided, invented, travelled, walked, started, died

Recording 7

a We wanted the bill.
b I needed some money.
c They lived in Spain.
d I liked her.
e They arrived at eight o'clock.
f We worked hard.
g I loved chocolate.
h I believed you.

Recording 8

Part 1
My grandparents were both Russian but they met in London. My grandmother's story was the most interesting. She was a servant girl in Russia and she worked for a rich family. During the First World War this rich family decided to move to London, and they took my grandmother and some of their other servants with them.

But when they got to London they decided they didn't need all these servants – they had too many – so they decided not to keep my grandmother, perhaps they didn't have enough money to keep her ... I don't know.

Part 2
So anyway, they decided to take my grandmother for a walk in the centre of London – Oxford Street or somewhere like that, and they said to her 'Wait here. We'll come back in a few minutes.' And then they just went away and never came back.

And she waited, and waited and waited. She was only sixteen years old, a poor servant girl from a farm in Russia ... she spoke no English at all, and they left her all alone in the centre of London – can you imagine?

Part 3
Anyway, she walked around for hours and hours trying to find someone who spoke Russian, and in the end she actually found some Russian people who took her to the Russian community in London. There was a big Russian community in Shoreditch in east London in those days.

And there she met my grandfather. He was forty-eight years old, and also Russian, and he decided he needed a wife to look after him. So he married my grandmother and they had two children, my father and my uncle. It's an amazing story isn't it?

Recording 11

A I was born in 1978 in a place called Swansea, which is a town in the south of Wales. My mum and dad were very happy, I think. I was their first daughter.
B I became interested in music when I was very, very young. I always loved music. When I was about three or four, I got a piano, not a real one, a toy piano, for Christmas, and I just loved it. I played with it for hours.
C I went to school in Swansea. I was happy at school most of the time. Music was my favourite subject, of course!
D When I was about twelve, I began to have piano lessons. My mum and dad got a teacher for me, and I learned how to play the piano. It was quite difficult, but I enjoyed it.
E I went to university in Wales. I'm sure you know what I studied, it was Music and Drama, and I graduated in 1999.
F Last year I became a professional singer. I made my first CD. I sang on a CD by someone called Hugh Morris. It was really exciting.

Module 8

Recording 2

a Dracula didn't live in a castle in Poland, he lived in Transylvania. And at night he became a vampire, but he didn't drink vodka, he drank blood as everyone knows!
b Alice didn't follow a white cat, she followed a white rabbit, but she certainly had lots of adventures.
c Robin Hood didn't live in China, he lived in England. It's true that he took money from the rich, but he didn't give it to his girlfriend, he gave it to poor people.
d It's true that Dr Frankenstein created a monster, but the monster wasn't handsome, it was very ugly, and people didn't love it. They were very frightened of it, they hated it.
e Romeo and Juliet weren't forty, they were fourteen years old – very young. It's true that their families hated each other and that the two young people fell in love and got married. But, of course, their families weren't pleased. They were very angry, and Romeo and Juliet didn't live happily together, they killed themselves.

Recording 3

A: Okay, well they didn't wear rollerblades five hundred years ago and they didn't ride scooters, so that's two mistakes.
B: And they didn't use mobile phones, or listen to music on their MP3 players.
A: Where?
B: Here, look.
A: Oh yeah, and they didn't read newspapers then.
B: Are you sure?
A: Yes, of course I am, and they didn't have clocks either.
B: No, okay if you say so. Oh look and the man on the wall's got trainers. They didn't wear trainers five hundred years ago!
A: No, you're right! What else?
B: Well they didn't eat burgers did they?
A: Oh no! And they didn't drink fizzy drinks, look that says cola.
B: Oh yes. Okay, so how many have we got? The rollerblades, the scooter, the burger, the fizzy drink, the clock, the newspaper, that's six. The trainers, the mobile, the MP3 player, nine. What else? This is getting hard now.
A: Mmm.
B: Oh, look! The little boy's got a toy aeroplane. They didn't have aeroplanes in Romeo and Juliet's time!
A: Oh, and the man on the scooter has got a baseball cap, look.
B: Oh yes. Well they definitely didn't have baseball caps then, so that's eleven mistakes. What's the other one. I can't see anything else, can you?
A: No, this is really hard.
B: Yeah. Oh, I know. The man on the scooter's got sunglasses look, under his baseball cap.
A: Oh yes, you're right, and they definitely didn't wear sunglasses in those days, so that's twelve mistakes!

Recording 4

1 They didn't have rollerblades.
2 They didn't eat burgers.
3 They didn't ride scooters.
4 They didn't read newspapers.
5 They didn't listen to music on an MP3 player.
6 They didn't use mobiles.
7 They didn't wear sunglasses.
8 They didn't wear trainers.
9 They didn't have aeroplanes.
10 They didn't drink fizzy drinks.
11 They didn't have clocks.
12 They didn't wear baseball caps.

Recording 5

A: JRR Tolkien wrote books that both adults and children love. Did he have a happy childhood himself?
B: No, he didn't actually – his father died when he was four and then his mother died when he was twelve and he went to live with a cousin who was a Catholic priest ... the family were very religious. Tolkien was a religious man all his life.
A: And did he start writing at a young age?
B: Well, actually, his first love was languages, especially ancient languages. In fact he became a professor of Anglo-Saxon – of Old English – at Oxford University.
A: Oh, really?
B: Yes, and as a kind of hobby he 'invented' languages.
A: He invented new languages?
B: Yes, and he wanted to create a fantasy world where people spoke his languages ... so that's why he wrote his first stories.
A: So how did he become a famous writer?
B: Well, he started to read his stories to his children and his friends' children, and they loved them, so he wrote more and more and more!
A: So when did the three *Lord of the Rings* books first appear?
B: In about 1954.
A: But, it's not only children who love Tolkien's books.
B: No, of course. In the 1960s the books were very popular with hippies. And they just continued to become more and more successful.
A: So when did Tolkien die?
B: He died in 1973, aged 81.
A: Did he see the films of his books?
B: No, no, no. They appeared a long time after his death!
A: The films made billions of dollars. Did his family make a lot of money from the films?
B: No, unfortunately! Tolkien sold the film rights for his books in 1969 for just £12,000.
A: Oh no! So were his family unhappy about the films?
B: No, not really. In fact his great-grandson Royd Tolkien acted in the last film. He had a small part.
A: Wow! Well, thank you for telling us about JRR Tolkien and now ...

Recording 6

1 The last book I read was *His Dark Materials* by Philip Pullman – it was absolutely brilliant.
2 I last went to a concert about three weeks ago – some friends were in a concert at my college.
3 I like different kinds of music but especially rock music – my favourite group are the Red Hot Chili Peppers.
4 I really like Cameron Diaz – she's really pretty and really funny and I think she's a very good actress.
5 It was okay ... not fantastic.
6 Yes actually, I love ballet, my favourite is *Swan Lake*.

Recording 9

a She wasn't married.
b He doesn't speak English.
c They weren't at home.
d I haven't got a pen.
e I don't like sport.
f She hasn't got a car.

Module 9

Recording 2

a A Vespa's slower than a Harley-Davidson.
b A Vespa's easier to ride than a Harley-Davidson.
c A Swatch is better for children than a Rolex.
d A Rolex is smarter than a Swatch.
e Cola's sweeter than mineral water.
f Mineral water's healthier than cola.

Recording 3

1 The tallest hotel in the world is the Burj al-Arab hotel in Dubai. It's 321 metres high.
2 The richest person in the world is Ingvar Kamprad from Sweden, head of the IKEA furniture shops. He has a personal fortune of fifty-three billion dollars. Bill Gates, head of Microsoft, has forty-seven billion dollars.
3 The most expensive city to buy a house or flat is Tokyo in Japan because the land is very expensive and there are so many people living there.
4 The oldest university in Europe is Bologna, in Italy but the oldest university in the world is in Karueein, in Morocco. It started in 859 AD – that's more than a thousand years ago.
5 The most successful European football club in the twentieth century was Real Madrid. They won a total of eighty-eight Cups and were European Champions eight times.
6 The highest town in the world is La Paz, the capital of Bolivia. It is 3,600 metres above sea level.
7 The most common word in the English language is 'the'.
8 The most popular group in the twentieth century were the Beatles. They sold 107 million albums in the USA alone.

Recording 4

A = ANNA, B–F = ASSISTANT

1 A: I'd like these, please. And have you got the new Coldplay CD?
B: Yes, over there. On that stand.
A: Do you take credit cards?
B: Yes, Visa or Mastercard. That's £50.20 altogether. Sign there. Thank you.

2 A: Excuse me. Have you got this in a medium?
C: Let me check for you. Yes, over here.
A: Oh, it's the wrong colour. Have you got it in blue?
C: I'm sorry. This is all we've got.
A: Thanks, anyway.

3 D: Can I help you?
A: Yes, I want a book about Greece.
D: You need the travel section over there.
A: Thank you. And do you sell diaries here?
D: No, we don't. Try the stationery department.
A: Which floor is that?
D: It's on the ground floor.

4 A: Can I try this pen, please?
E: Sure. Here's some paper.
A: Mmm. How much is it?
E: It's £25.00.
A: Okay, I'll take it. And have you got any diaries?
E: I'm sorry, we haven't. We only sell them in November and December.

5 A: Can I have one of those please?
F: This one?
A: No, the chocolate one.
F: That's £1.98.
A: Thank you. What time does the store close?
F: At eight o'clock.
A: And is there a restaurant or café here?
F: Yes, there's a restaurant on the fourth floor. You can take the lift over there.

Recording 6

A = PETER, B–F = ASSISTANT

1 A: How much are these postcards?
B: Twenty-five pence each. How many have you got?
A: Eight.
B: That's two pounds.
A: And I'd like eight stamps for Canada.
B: That's £4.80 altogether.

2 A: Do you sell batteries?
C: Yes, what size?
A: It's for this camera.
C: Let me see ... Okay. How many do you want?
A: Two, please.
C: That's £2.10.

3 A: How much is this T-shirt?
D: It's £19.99.
A: Have you got it in a smaller size?
D: Let me check for you. Yes, I've got one here.
A: Okay. I'll have it. Do you take credit cards?
D: Visa or Mastercard. Can you sign here? Thank you.

4 A: Can I have one of those cakes, please?
E: This one?
A: No, that one over there.
E: Anything else?
A: Yes, some bread.
E: Large, medium or small?
A: Small, please.
E: That's £1.30.

Recording 7

1 A good souvenir from Russia is a Matryoshka doll, you know, with all the smaller dolls inside the bigger ones. You can buy a lot of different kinds. For example, with pictures of the president or of famous people, but I like the traditional ones best. So yes, a doll is the best idea.

2 Last year we were on holiday in Morocco and we loved all the furniture, the tables and lamps, so we bought a traditional Moroccan lamp for our house. It looks great in our living room.

3 I think the best thing to buy is something leather, maybe a leather bag, because here in Italy we make the best bags in the world. So, why don't you buy your friend a leather bag?

4 Spain is famous for music, especially guitar music. I think a CD of Spanish guitar music is a good idea.

5 A souvenir? Well, you can buy some very good cheese in France. So how about a selection of cheese?

6 I went to Kenya on business last month and I wanted to buy something for my wife. She loves clothes so I decided to buy her a silk scarf. She really likes it!

Module 10

Recording 1

1
A: Hello?
B: Hi, it's me.
A: Oh hi, where are you?
B: I'm still in town. I'm waiting for a bus but there's some kind of problem. All the buses are delayed. I'll be a bit late I'm afraid.
A: Again?
B: Look I'm really sorry. I'll see you soon, yeah?
A: Okay.
B: Bye darling.

2
C: Hi darling, how are you?
D: I'm fine, but ... where are you? It's eight o'clock!
C: I'm still at work, I'm afraid.
D: Why, what are you doing?
C: We've got a bit of a crisis. I'm finishing an important report for my boss.
D: It sounds very noisy!
C: Sorry darling, I can't hear you. The reception's not very good. I'll call you later, okay?
D: Okay. Speak to you later.

3
E: Hello?
F: Hi Mum, it's me.
E: Hi, where are you?
F: I'm in town. I didn't catch the bus. I'm walking home because I need some books from the library for my homework.
E: Oh right ... who's that with you?
F: Oh, I'm chatting to some people I know from school.
E: Well, don't be long, dinner's at seven.
F: Yeah, no problem, Mum. See you soon.
E: Okay, see you, love.

Recording 3

a She's sitting in a café.
b He's waiting for a bus.
c She's standing with her friends.
d She isn't going home.
e They're laughing and chatting.
f It isn't raining.
g They're having a drink.
h She's carrying some books.
i The traffic isn't moving.
j She's wearing school uniform.

Recording 4

laughing, chatting, raining, sitting, waiting, standing, going, having, carrying, moving, wearing

Recording 6

Andy
Our uniforms are interesting because they're very, very old. Imagine ... the hats we wear are more than 300 years old. People were smaller then, so the uniforms are really uncomfortable now, and very heavy. You want to move your head all the time, but you can't, of course. The trousers are also old, and they are made of a special kind of leather – also very uncomfortable, so we wear women's tights under them. We don't usually tell people about that, though!

Michelle
Generally, I really like my uniform. It's smart. I wear a white shirt, a black jacket, black trousers or skirt, a kind of black and white tie, and this lovely black and white hat! There's only one thing that I hate ... the shoes! Police shoes are really big and ugly. Yuk!

Recording 8

This is a picture of a street. It's a lovely morning and the sun is shining. On the left of the picture there's a girl walking along the street. She's wearing a white skirt and she's listening to some music on her headphones.

In the middle of the picture there's a man with a big black and white dog: the dog is running after a cat. The dog's owner is wearing a pair of sunglasses.

On the right of the picture, there are two women sitting at a table and drinking coffee. One of the women has got short dark hair. She's tall, slim and beautiful.

Recording 9

1 A: Excuse me, have you got the time, please?
  B: Yes, it's ten o'clock.
2 A: Is anyone sitting here?
  B: No, take it.
3 A: Is this bus going to the city centre?
  B: Yes, I think so.
4 A: Is it okay to park here?
  B: Yes, it's fine.
5 A: Excuse me, have you got any change, please?
  B: No, sorry, I haven't.
6 A: Is this the way to the station?
  B: Yes, it's over there.
7 A: What time do the shops close on Saturdays?
  B: At about five thirty.

Consolidation Modules 6–10

Recording 1

a Can I have the bill, please?
b How much is this T-shirt?
c I'd like to order two large pizzas, please.
d I'm sorry, I don't understand. Can you say that again, please?
e Do you sell shampoo?
f Have you got this in a bigger size?
g No, thanks, I'm just looking.

Module 11

Recording 1

1 Dogs can swim.
2 Elephants can't jump.
3 Newborn babies can't see colours.
4 Ants can carry heavy things.
5 Kangaroos can't swim.
6 Some parrots can talk.
7 Chimpanzees can climb trees.
8 Dolphins can jump high.
9 Newborn babies can't walk.

Recording 2

a 400
b 820
c 9,000
d 4.8
e 20,000
f 300,000
g 12,000,000
h 670,000,000
i 7,865
j 12.7

Recording 3

Cats started living with people as pets thousands of years ago, and now there are about 500 million domestic cats around the world. Cats are usually very good hunters and can catch mice and small birds – although they don't often eat them, if they can get normal cat food! In fact, they are very lazy animals: on average, they sleep for about sixteen hours a day. They also spend a lot of time keeping themselves clean by washing their fur with their tongues.

Male cats are called toms and female cats are called queens. Female cats are pregnant for about nine weeks, and usually have between two and five kittens. There are over one hundred breeds of cat, and even a hairless cat called the sphinx cat!

Recording 4

People say that a dog is a man's best friend. People and dogs first started living together about ten thousand years ago. Now there are fifty-three million dogs just in the USA. The Americans spend over two billion dollars on dog food every year – four times what they spend on baby food! Altogether there are about a hundred and fifty breeds of dog. Many dogs work for humans, doing jobs such as helping the blind, helping the police and customs officers to find drugs, and even racing! Greyhound racing is popular in many countries. The fastest greyhounds can run as fast as sixty-five kilometres per hour. Perhaps the most famous working dog was Rin Tin Tin, who died in 1932. He earned his money by making films. He made fifty films and earned about forty-four thousand dollars for each one!

Recording 7

1 There are officially nine planets in our solar system. Mercury is the nearest to the sun and Pluto is the furthest away. But in 2004 scientists discovered Sedna, a possible tenth planet in our solar system.
2 Chow Mein is a type of Chinese food made with noodles and meat.
3 Blood makes up about 8% of the human body, that means that the average adult has about five to six litres of blood.
4 The sun is approximately 150 million kilometres from the earth.
5 The Islamic holy city of Mecca is in Saudi Arabia. It is in the west part of the country.
6 France won the world cup in football in 1998. England won in 1966.
7 There are approximately 1.6 kilometres in a mile – or 0.6 miles in a kilometre.

8 The Terminator actor and governor of California, Arnold Schwarzenegger has lived in the USA for many years but he was actually born in Graz in Austria in 1947.
9 Switzerland has four official languages: German, French, Italian and Romanish.

Recording 9

Do you want some water?
Where were you last night?
What did you do at the weekend?

Recording 10

a big hotel
Is there a hairdresser's near here?
He's got long hair.
Have you got the time?

Module 12

Recording 1

Neela On Saturday night I'm going out with a big group of friends, probably to a club in the city centre. Then on Sunday I'm going to have lunch with my grandparents ... the whole family is going to be there because it's my grandmother's birthday.
Phil I'm feeling very tired so I'm not going to do much this weekend, just stay at home and relax. I want to finish the book I'm reading and sleep a lot!
Megan I'm going shopping on Saturday. It's my boyfriend's birthday and I want to get him a digital camera. And then on Sunday we're going to have a barbecue and invite lots of friends.
Jamie I'd like to go away somewhere this weekend, to the country, and maybe go for a long walk. But it depends on the weather.
Anna I'm a hairdresser and I've got to work on Saturday, but on Saturday evening I'd like to see that new film with Keanu Reeves, and then on Sunday afternoon I'm going to a friend's wedding.
Sharif This weekend? Nothing special. On Saturday afternoon I want to watch the football and on Sunday I'd like to do something with the children, maybe take them swimming.

Recording 5

A = AMY, L = LISA

A: It's your birthday next Saturday, isn't it?
L: Yeah, but I don't really know what I want to do. Maybe I'll stay at home and have a quiet night in.
A: Don't be silly, you can't do that! I know, why don't we all go out for a meal somewhere – you, me, Martin, Ben and some of the others maybe?
L: Yeah, okay – that sounds more fun!
A: Where shall we go?
L: There's Bagatti's but we always go there. How about that new French restaurant? I can't remember its name ...
A: The French Table?
L: Let's go there. I'd really like to try it.
A: Yeah, it sounds good. I'll speak to Martin and the others and check that they can come. Then shall I phone the restaurant and book a table?
L: Yes, please, if that's okay.
A: What time? Eight, half eight?
L: Let's book it for eight, and then we can go somewhere else later.
A: Yes, good idea!

Recording 6

1 A: How about a coffee?
B: That sounds nice.
2 A: Shall I take your jacket?
B: Oh, thanks.
3 A: Shall we ask for the bill?
B: Yes, good idea.
4 A: I'll take you home.
B: No, it's okay. I'll call a taxi.
5 A: Why don't we go to the cinema?
B: Yeah, that's a good idea.
6 A: Let's have another drink.
B: I'm okay, thanks.
7 A: Shall I call you tomorrow?
B: Yeah, okay.
8 A: Why don't we meet at the station?
B: That sounds fine.
9 A: I'll book the tickets.
B: Great.

Recording 7

J = JULIE, R = ROB, S = SARAH

J: Do you two still want to go away for the weekend – you know, on the 22nd?
R: Yeah, definitely.
S: Yeah, I want to ...
J: Because we talked about the Isle of Wight, do you remember?
R: Oh, yes. I'd love to go there. People say it's a really good place for walking, really good cliff walks.
S: Mmm, it's just that I went there last summer and the summer before. I'd like to try somewhere different ... a city maybe.
R: Yeah, I can understand that.
J: How about Canterbury? The city's lovely and it's not too far ... and we can visit Leeds Castle, too. I'd really like to see Leeds Castle, it looks so beautiful in photos.
S: Yeah, but we can do all that in one day from London – we don't need a weekend.
R: Yeah, you're right, and it's not a great place for walking, if we want to walk ...
J: I've got a much better idea! Why don't we go to Dublin for the weekend? I read something about it in the newspaper the other day. You can get really cheap flights, and there's something for all of us ...
S: Yeah?
J: Yeah, there are lots of things to see; the castle, the river, Trinity College and things. And it's got really good shops and bars, so there's plenty to do in the evening.
S: It sounds great to me. I love shopping and we all like going out!
J: And you're near the Wicklow Mountains so you can go walking for the day on Sunday, Rob, if you want to.
R: Perfect, well let's go to Dublin then.
S: So ... we fly there on the Friday evening after work about what? Six o'clock?
J: Yeah, and then we can come back on Sunday evening about the same time, six o'clock?
R: Yeah, six is good for me. Where are we going to stay – in a hotel?
J: The newspaper article said that B&Bs are really good in Dublin, and they're cheaper than a hotel.
S: Fine. Well, shall we find a B&B then? I'll do that if you like.
J: Okay, and shall I check the times of the flights?
R: Great ... perfect!

Recording 8

a How about Canterbury?
b I'd really like to see Leeds Castle.
c I'd like to try somewhere different.
d There are lots of things to see.
e It sounds great to me.
f Let's go to Dublin then.
g Where are we going to stay?
h I'll find a B&B if you like.
i Shall I check the times?

Recording 10

Thailand

I = INTERVIEWER, S = SUMALEE

I: So what's the weather like in Thailand, exactly?
S: Well basically, Thailand has three seasons every year. The cool season isn't really cold, just cooler. It's from November to February. Then the hot season is in April and May and the rainy season is from June to October.
I: And does it rain all day in the rainy season?
S: No, no. It rains really heavily, but usually it only lasts for about two hours!
I: So what kind of temperatures do you have?
S: Well in my city, Bangkok, the hottest days in April are about thirty-five degrees, so it's really hot in April, and the coldest in December are about seventeen degrees.
I: So it's never very cold?
S: No, it's never cold.

Canada

I = INTERVIEWER, C = CATHY

I: So is it true that it's always cold in Canada?
C: That's what everyone thinks, but it's not really true. In the Yukon Territory in the north, it's really cold. There's snow there for maybe eight months of the year but in my city Vancouver, on the west coast, it's completely different.
I: So what are the winters like in Vancouver?
C: Most days it's cloudy, I guess, and it can be quite wet, but it isn't really cold.
I: And do you have nice summers?
C: Yeah, the summers are good, it's usually sunny and warm. I guess the average temperature is about 18 degrees, so that's fine!

Recording 12

1 I'd like to drive.
2 I'll post it for you.
3 We're going to stay at home.
4 It's raining and I'm really wet!
5 Let's take a taxi.

Module 13

Recording 2

Will I was always very bad at school. I failed all my exams, and I left secondary school at the age of 16. I'm really sorry I didn't work harder at school. I worked as a van driver for a few years. Then I went to college to get some qualifications. I did a course in information technology. I studied in the evenings after work: for the first time I really enjoyed going to class. I took my exams again and this time I passed! It shows that it's never too late to learn. Now I've got my own computer sales company!
Vicki Before I had children I worked for a big financial company – it was a good job and I earned quite a lot of money, but I worked long hours and there was a lot of travelling abroad. So when my two children were born I stopped work for a few years to look after them. Now they're at school and so I'm training to be a maths teacher – maths was my favourite subject at school. It's a really good job for me because I'll have holidays at the same time as my children.
Francine Languages were always my favourite subjects at school. When I was at primary school they taught us French from the age of eight. I found the lessons interesting, and I soon found that I was good at learning languages, so then I started learning Spanish as well. Now I'm at university. Next year I'm going to Lisbon to study Portuguese. When I graduate, I'd like to look for a job where I can use my languages, in an international company maybe.
Josh I'd really like to be a journalist when I leave school, but it's a very difficult career to get into, so everyone tells me. I want to study history and politics when I go to university, because I think they'll help me with my career, and I'm also helping to write the school magazine, to get some experience of journalism.

Recording 3

a I'll see her at work.
b I won't wait for you.
c I want to go home.
d I'll phone him at the weekend.
e She won't arrive early.
f I'll get up early.
g I go to the gym in the morning.
h We won't walk home.
i I want to speak to her.
j I have two children.

Recording 4

Taka I'd really like to do the course in performing arts, because I'm very interested in dance, but I have to think about my career. I work as a fashion designer and will need to use a computer to design clothes, so I'm going to do the Information technology course. I can study dance and photography in my free time.
Oliver I really like the idea of the performing arts course. I'm in a rock band and I love drama and music, but my parents don't like that idea at all, they don't think it's very useful for my career. They want me to do the information technology course, but I already know a lot about computers and I don't want to spend my life working with computers. So I've decided to do the leisure and tourism course because travelling is quite interesting, and it makes Mum and Dad happy because it's a 'real job'!
Gaby I really liked the idea of the Sports studies course – it looks great – working with people and doing something I enjoy, but if I do the part-time course it's just so long! Four years studying three evenings a week – it's too much. I looked at the childcare course too, but it's working with really small children, and I prefer older children. I don't really know much about small children. So in the end I didn't choose any of these courses. I'm going to look for another sports studies course at a different college, because I want to try to find something shorter.

Module 14

Recording 1

a **Matt** I've spent about thirty hours on the Internet so far this week. I'm really into it. I usually go on about 9.00 in the evening after dinner and things, and I probably stay on until about one, two in the morning. The rest of my family are all in bed, but I can't sleep until really late.
b **Josie** I haven't watched any TV so far this week – I don't own a television. I hate television – it's really bad for you.
c **Richard** I've had three computers in my life so far. The first one was really funny – it was a little box with a really small screen. It didn't have e-mail or the Internet or anything – but it was the most expensive of all my computers!
d **Belinda** I haven't written any letters so far this year, I don't think ... no, I don't think so. Nobody writes letters these days, do they? I always send e-mails, or cards if it's a birthday or something personal.
e **Jessica** I don't know how many books I've read so far this year ... too many to count. I've read five books this week so far. I usually read about seven or eight in a week. I love reading. If I really like a book, I might read it five or six times.

Recording 3

1 I've lost my mobile.
2 He's forgotten to post this letter.
3 She's phoned three times today.
4 We've sent her a card.
5 Have you sent that e-mail?
6 Has she written to you?
7 I haven't spoken to her this week.
8 He hasn't called today.

Recording 4

Conversation 1

J: Hello, can I speak to Paul, please?
A: Sorry, he's not here.
J: Oh, I see ... do you know when he'll be back?
A: Not really, no ...
J: OK, I'll try again this afternoon.
A: OK, 'bye.

Conversation 2

B: TKO Travel, good morning.
J: Hello, is that Julia Thompson?
B: Speaking.
J: Hello, this is Jane Hancock, I'm calling about the flight tickets.
B: Oh, right, yes.
J: For Copenhagen? Are they ready yet?
B: Yes, well unfortunately there's a bit of a problem ...

Conversation 3

AM: Hello, this is Tania Shaw. Sorry, I'm not here at the moment. Please leave a message after the tone: BEEP.
J: Hi, it's Jane here. Can you call me back? It's about the flight tickets. My number is 890921. Talk to you soon. Bye!

Conversation 4

M: Hello?
J: Hello, Mum, it's me. Is Dad there?
M: He's asleep in front of the television. Shall I wake him up?
J: No, it's okay. Can you ask him to call me?
M: Yes, of course. Is everything okay?
J: Oh yes, I'm fine. I've just got to do all these things before Saturday.

Recording 8

1	stamp	3	month	5	carry	7	just	9	love
2	chat	4	worried	6	camera	8	fantastic	10	study

Module 15

Recording 1

1 **Fabrizio from Venice** Of course, there's lots to see in Venice. It's one of the most famous cities in the world. First of all, there are the canals. We don't have cars in Venice so you have to travel everywhere by canal. The most famous place in Venice is the square, St Mark's Square with St Mark's Cathedral. And there are lots of museums and palaces, and beautiful bridges, too.
2 **Yumi from Kyoto** For me, Kyoto is the most beautiful city in Japan. It's also the oldest city. It has many old traditional buildings and beautiful palaces, temples and gardens. The most famous temple is the Golden Pavilion. There are also very good markets, and also really good shops, and some beautiful modern buildings, too.
3 **Murat from Istanbul** I think Istanbul is maybe the most beautiful city in the world, but of course I come from Istanbul! The city is built on hills around the Bosphoros, and so there are beautiful views across the water. From the water you can see mosques – the most famous is called the Blue Mosque – and palaces and bridges. Istanbul also has a very famous market called the Grand Bazaar. But these days we also have many modern shopping centres and modern buildings and hotels. It's really a fantastic city.
4 **Claudia from Rio de Janeiro** Rio is one of the most exciting cities in South America ... first of course we have our famous beach, the Copacabana, and there are many mountains round Rio – the most famous is the Sugar Plum Mountain, where you can see a big statue of Christ, and of course we have our famous stadium ... the Maracanã stadium, maybe the most famous football stadium in the world ... it's really a great place.
5 **Marina from St Petersburg** You will really love St Petersburg there are so many things to see. The most famous is the Winter Palace, where the Tsars lived, and the Hermitage Museum which is a fantastic art gallery, and we have a very beautiful river too, the River Neva, and of course churches and cathedrals. There is so much to see!

Recording 2

river, mountain, cathedral, museum, palace, gallery, castle, stadium, canal, building, market, temple, garden, statue

Recording 3

1 ... and if you look up on the right-hand side of the bus you have a very good view of Edinburgh Castle at the top of the hill. The oldest part of the building – St Margaret's Chapel is nearly 900 years old and the castle as a whole has been occupied since ...
2 We are now driving along the street known as the Royal Mile. This is one of the oldest streets in Edinburgh and at 1.6 kilometres (or a mile!) it is the longest. As you can see there are many historic houses in the street and many cafés, bars and restaurants here where you can relax over a drink and ...
3 The very old house on your left is John Knox's house. Approximately 500 years old it is the oldest house in the Royal Mile and one of the oldest in Scotland. It is where John Knox the religious leader, died in 1572. Knox was well known in his time ...
4 This fine neo-classical building is the Scottish National Gallery and it contains about four thousand paintings, not just by Scottish painters, but also by well-known European painters, such as the Italian master Titian. The gallery opens every day from nine o'clock ...
5 And here on the left you can see Holyrood Palace. The palace, which was founded in 1128 is the British Queen's official home in Scotland, and many kings and queens have lived here. The most famous Queen of Scotland, Mary Queen of Scots, lived here from 1561 until 1567 when she moved ...

Recording 5

a You have to wear a uniform.
b You don't have to take exams.
c You don't have to study.
d You have to get up early.
e You have to do a lot of exercise.
f You have to have short hair.
g You have to obey instructions.
h You don't have to earn your living.

Recording 6

1 A: Excuse me, is the National Gallery near here?
B: Yes, it's over there on the right look.
A: Oh, thank you very much.
2 A: Excuse me, but where's the nearest post office?
B: It's very near here. Go straight on and it's on the left, it's about 200 metres.
A: Thank you.
3 A: Sorry, but is this the way to the river?
B: Yes, take the first street on the left over there, can you see it?
A: Yes.
B: Well, go straight on for about a hundred metres and you're there.
A: Oh great, thanks
4 A: Where's the nearest cashpoint please?
B: Can you see the statue over there?
A: Yes.
B: Go past the statue and take the second street on the right and there's a bank on the left with a cash point there.
A: Fantastic, thank you.
B: You're welcome.